



Aethiopica 24 (2021)

International Journal of Ethiopian and
Eritrean Studies

GETATCHEW HAILE †

Article

*Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with His Twelve Apostle
Disciples at Jericho (EMML 7229, fols 93r–109r)*

Aethiopica 24 (2021), 7–77

ISSN: 1430-1938

Edited in the Asien-Afrika-Institut
Hiob-Ludolf-Zentrum für Äthiopistik
der Universität Hamburg
Abteilung für Afrikanistik und Äthiopistik

by Alessandro Bausi

in cooperation with

Bairu Tafla, Ludwig Gerhardt, Susanne Hummel,
Alexander Meckelburg, and Siegbert Uhlig

Editorial Team

Sophia Dege-Müller, Francesca Panini

Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with His Twelve Apostle Disciples at Jericho (EMML 7229, fols 93r–109r)

GETATCHEW HAILE †

Introduction

The apocalyptic text under study, which may be titled, *Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with His Twelve Apostle Disciples at Jericho*, has been taken from Collegeville, MN, Hill Museum & Manuscript Library, Ethiopian Manuscript Microfilm Library (= EMML) 7229, fols 93r–109r.¹ EMML 7229 is a microfilm of a late-sixteenth/early-seventeenth-century manuscript bearing the title *Nägärä Maryam* or *Story of Mary*.² It is one of the two conversations known so far. The other took place at Däbrä Zäyt, that is on the Mount of Olives.³ Although copied in the same hand, this conversation cannot be considered a part of the traditional *Nägärä Maryam*. It is considered so, perhaps, because there is a statement in it which says that Jesus beatifies the faithful who pray to her: ‘**ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የዐወይው ፡ ወይስእሉ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ማርያም ፡ እምየ ፡ በሥጋ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይዜክርዋ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ጸሎቶሙ ፡ ወእስተብቀሩዮቶሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡ ይከውን ፡ መንበሮሙ ፡ ወማኅደሮሙ ፡**’ (‘Blessed are those who wail and pray to Mary, my mother in body, (and) those who remember her in their prayers and supplications. Their living and dwelling will be in the Kingdom of Heaven’, fol. 100r).

The story is included in the book of the *Miracles of Jesus* (*Māṣḥafä Al’atqärfä*) in several abbreviated versions, one of which was published by Sylvain Grébaut in his edition of the miracles.⁴ The closest of such versions to what we have in EMML 7229, in the EMML collection, is the version in EMML

¹ = Galbiati 1957, I, Chapters 30, 31, 32, 33, 35, 37.

² Parchment, 35 × 25 cm, 123 fols, 2 cols, 20–25 lines. A note about the book by *Šāḥafe tā’əzaz* Gäbrä Šəllase says, **በአፄ ፡ ምኒልክ ፡ መንግሥት ፡ ወላሞ ፡ ከዋሻ ፡ ተቀብሮ ፡ ተገኝቶ ፡ አምጥተው ፡ ለየኒታ ፡ የሰጥዋቸው ፡ መጽሐፍ ፡ ነው ፡ ጸሐፊ ፡ ትእዛዝ ፡ ገብረ ፡ ሥላሴ ፡** (‘It is a manuscript that was found buried in a cave in Wälamo, and that people brought during the reign of *Aḍe Mənilək* and gave to *Yäneta* (the Master)’). It seems that it was buried to survive, as it did, the sixteenth-century assault by the Islamic forces of *Imām Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm al-Ġāzī*. This means it was copied before the assault.

³ Horn 2017, 70.

⁴ Grébaut 1923, 824–833.

2180, fols 79r–82r. But it is nowhere close to being collated with the version under study.

As for the source of the conversation, the text rightly concludes with a note that it was translated from (Christian) Arabic (fol. 109r).⁵ It seems safe, therefore, to conclude that this text is a so-far unknown Gə‘əz addition to the class of the apocalyptic literature received from Egypt, as none of the known texts of the class listed by Paolo La Spisa has any similarity to it.⁶ To add one more note, its relationship to the *Māṣḥafä kidan* and the *Qälemāntos* is very clear.⁷

The arrangement I followed is that of the Arabic text, *Iohannis Evangelium apocryphum arabice*, edited by Giovanni Galbiati.⁸ The paragraphs have been divided and numbered following the Arabic in order to simplify comparison. Whether this particular Arabic text is the *Vorlage* of the Gə‘əz under study will remain an open question. The fact that each has its own arrangement suggests otherwise. In the Gə‘əz, it is one unit, whereas in the Arabic, the story is scattered in Chapters 30, 37, 35, 31, 32, and 33. The unit in Gə‘əz, presented here, is the counterpart of the Arabic Chapters 30, 37, and 35.

The copyist is almost consistent in writing the fourth (*rabə*) and seventh (*sabə*) order of the letters with legs as first order (*gə‘əz*), and sometimes vice versa. So, we have ሰበ, ከነ, ለዕለ, ከሆናት, ቀል for ሰበ, ኮነ, ላዕለ, ካሆናት, ቃል. In some cases the legs are shortened insignificantly. The difference between ሰ and ስ is also not always clear in many cases. In all these cases, I chose to copy the words with these letters in their right forms rather than dedicate the bigger part of each page to footnotes. On the other hand, ኦ and ሐ are ኦ and ሐ in many (not all) cases. Even ኦ is occasionally copied with its first leg shortened like ኦ. The first order form of the letter ኘ does not exist in this manuscript. As a result, today’s ኘበ is consistently ኘበ. When ኘ is followed by ዜ, as in ኦግዚኦ and ኦግዚኦብሔር, the two letters are always connected, both sharing the same leg. The difference between # and # is not always clear in the picture of the manuscript. And, as one can see, there is no obvious system of their use. I have copied them as they appear to my eyes.

The grammatical rule of agreement between the noun and the verb, in as far as gender (masculine/feminine) and number (singular/plural) are concerned, is not strictly observed in the text. ኦከብ (həzb) is sometimes singular and sometimes plural. In the translation, I have followed the English rule regardless what is in the text.

⁵ See also Löfgren 1960.

⁶ La Spisa 2014.

⁷ Respectively Beylot 1984, 1–15, and Bausi 1992.

⁸ Galbiati 1957, I.

Conversation of Our Lord

**Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus
with His Twelve Apostle Disciples at Jericho**

Text and Translation

Text

Chapter 30

1 | በሰመ : አብ : ወወልድ : ወመንፈስ : ቅዱስ : ፩አምላክ ፤፤ fol. 93r
 ንወጥን : በረድኤተ : እግዚአብሔር : ወበብዝሃ : ምሕረቱ : በጽሑፈ : ተዋሥ
 5 አተ : እግዚእን : ወመድኃኒን : ኢየሱስ : ምስለ : ፲ወ፪ ሐዋርያት : አርዳኢሁ :
 በሀገረ : ኢያሪኮ : በሰላመ : እግዚአብሔር : አሜን ፤፤
 ወሶበ : መጽአ : እግዚእን : ኃበ : ሀገረ : ኢያሪኮ : አስተጋብአሙ : ለኵ
 ሎሙ : ወይቤሎሙ : እስመ : አንትሙ : ውሉድ : ርስተ : እግዚእ : ወለ
 ክሙ : አስተዳለውኩ : መንግሥተ : ሰማያት : እምቅድመ : ዓለም : ወእምቅ
 10 ድመ : ይትፈጠር : ሰማይ : ወምድር ። ወአንትሙስ : ሕሩያን : ወንጹሐን :
 ኢነገርኩክሙ : ዘንተ : ኩሎ : እስመ : ፩እምኔክሙ : ሰይጣን : ውእቱ ። ወኢ
 ኮነ : ዕሩዩ : ከማክሙ : ከመ : ይረስ : መንግሥተ : ሰማያት : ዘኢይጤየቅ :
 ፍካሬ : ዚአሃ : እንተ : ኢርእያ : ዐይን : ወዘኢተሐለየት : ውስተ : ልበ :
 ሰብእ ።
 15 አማን : እብለክሙ : እስመ : አንትሙ : ፲ወ፪ትነብሩ : በዕለተ : ምጽአትየ :
 ዲበ : ፲ወ፪መናብርት : ወትኳንኑ : ፲ወ፪ነገደ : እስራኤል ። አንትሙ :
 ውእቱ : ማኅቶቱ : ለዓለም : ወተሰፈው : ርስተ : ዘአንትሙ : ድልዋን :
 ለመብልዓ : ሕይወት : ዘለዓለም ።

2 ወካዕበ : ይቤሎ : ለስምያን : ኩኩሕ : አስምያን : ወልደ : ዮና : መኑ[:]¹
 20 ትብለኒ : ኪያየ ። ወአውሥአ : ስምያን : እንዘ : ይብል : እስመ : አንተ :
 ውእቱ : ክርስቶስ : ወልደ : እግዚአብሔር : ሕያው : መድኃኒ : ዓለም ፤፤ ወይ
 ቤሎ : ብፁዕ : አንተ : የስምያን : ወልደ : ዮና : አቡየ : ዘውስተ : ሰማያት :
 ከሠተ : ለከ : ከመ : ታእምር ። አእምር : ወጠይቅ : አስምያን : እስመ : ዘት
 ጉደጉድ : ጥኅተ : ይትረኃው : ለከ ። ብፁዕ : አንተ : አስምያን : እስመ :
 25 ብዙኃን : እምነ : አበው : ወነቢያት : ዘፈነውክምሙ : ጽሕቁ : ከመ : ይነ
 ጽሩ : ኃበ : ዘነጻርከ : አንተ : ወኢረከቡ : ዘተፈነው : ብፁዓት አዕዛኒከ : አስም
 ያን : እለ : ሰምዓ : ነገርየ ። ብፁዓት : አዕይንቲከ : እለ : ርእያ : ኪያየ ። አእም
 ርኬ : አስምያን : እስመ : አብርሃም : አቡከ : ፈተወ : ከመ : ይርአይ : ኪያየ :
 መዋዕለ : ነዊኃ ። ወእምድኅረ : ዝንቱ : ወሀብክዎ : ጸሕቆ : ወርእየ : ኪያየ :

APPARATUS | 19 I put in square brackets [] letters that are insufficiently legible or are missed by the copyist; repeated letters and words are placed in curly brackets { }.¹ For መኑ : ?

¹ Paragraphing is mine. In the translation, expressions in parentheses are supplied for the English.
² Cf. Matt. 25:34.
³ Cf. 1 Cor. 2:9, and *Mystagogia* in Hammerschmidt 1960, 70. Quoted in the anaphoras of the Three Hundred Eighteen, of Basil, of John Chysostom, and of James of Sarug, as well

Translation¹

Chapter 30

fol. 93r **1** | In the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit. One God.

We begin with the help of God and by the plenteousness of his mercy writing the conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with the twelve Apostles, his disciples, (which took place) in the city of Jericho, in the peace of God. Amen.

When Our Lord came to the city of Jericho, he gathered them all together and said to them, ‘You are children (of) the inheritance of the Lord. I prepared the Kingdom of Heaven for you before the world and before heaven and earth were created.² You are chosen and pure ones. I did not say all this you (from the beginning) because one of you is Satan, not equal to you to inherit the Kingdom of Heaven like you, whose explanation would not be made, which eye has not seen nor entered into the heart of man.’³ 15

Truly I say to you, that you, the Twelve, will sit, on the day of my coming, on twelve thrones and judge the twelve tribes of Israel.⁴ You are the light of the world.⁵ Do expect (to receive) the inheritance, the food you deserve for eternal life.’

2 Furthermore, he said to Simon the Rock, ‘O Simon, son of Jonah, who do you call me?’ Peter answered, saying, ‘You are the Christ, the Son of the living God, the Saviour of the world.’⁶ He said to him, | p. 94 ‘Blessed are you, O Simon, son of Jonah. My Father who is in heaven has revealed (it) to you that you may know (this).⁷ Know and understand, O Simon, for the door you knock will be open for you. Blessed are you, O Simon, for many of the fathers and the prophets whom I had sent longed to see what you saw but did not find what they were sent for. Blessed are your ears, O Simon, which heard my words. Blessed are your eyes which saw me.⁸ Know, therefore, O Simon, that your father Abraham longed for a long time to see me. After that I fol. 93v gave him his wish, he saw me and was glad | .⁹ Truly I say to you, O

as in the *Supplication for the dead*, see *Mashafa qaddase* 1957/1958, 134, 177, 206, 227, and 286, respectively.

⁴ Matt. 19:28

⁵ Matt. 5:14.

⁶ Matt. 16:16.

⁷ Matt. 16:15–17.

⁸ Cf. Matt. 13:17.

⁹ Cf. John 8:56.

ወተፈሥታ ፡፡ አማን ፡ እብላከ ፡ አስምዖን ፡ እስመ ፡ ዘማዊያን ፡ ወፈያት ፡ ወመ fol. 93v
 ጸባሐዊያን ፡² ይቀድምዎሙ ፡ ለደቂቀ ፡ እስራኤል ፡ በዋዓ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግ
 ሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡፡ አማን ፡ እብላከ ፡ አስምዖን ፡ አንሰ ፡ አጋድግ ፡ ወእስሪ ፡ ለደ
 ቂቀ ፡ እስራኤል ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ኃጢአቶሙ ፡ ወፅርፈቶሙ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ወልደ ፡ እንለ ፡
 5 እመሕያው ፡፡ ወዘሰ ፡ ፀረፉ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ መንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ወተናገሩ ፡ ቃለ ፡
 እኩየ ፡ ኢይትጋደግ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ኢበዝ ፡ ዓለም ፡ ወኢበዘይመጽእ ፡ ወኩሉ ፡
 ዘየአምን ፡ ብየ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ አነ ፡ አአምኖ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ አቡየ ፡ ወመላ
 እክትየ ፡ ቅዱሳን ፡ ዘውስተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡ አእምር ፡ አስምዖን ፡ እስመ ፡ ናሁ ፡
 ይመጽእ ፡ መዋዕል ፡ ይሔሊ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ዘይቀትለክሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዘመሥዋዕተ ፡
 10 ያበውዕ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡ ወትከውኑ ፡ ጽሉዓነ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ቦኃበ ፡
 ኩሉ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ወይጾእልዎ ፡ ወይዘነጉጉዎ ፡ ለኩሉ ፡ ዘይዜከር ፡ ስምየ ፡ በአ
 ፉሁ ፡፡ ወያጸንፀው ፡ ልቦሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዕብን ፡ ላዕሌክሙ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡፡

3 አእምር ፡ አስምዖን ፡ እስመ ፡ ናሁ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡? አሕዛብ ፡ ወይወፅኡ ፡
 እምውስተ ፡ ገዳም ፡ ዘይሚንኑ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ ወይትናገሩ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡
 15 ነገረ ፡ እኩየ ፡ ዘኢተናገሩ ፡ ካልአን ፡ ከማሆሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ዘኢመፍ
 ትው ፡ ለብሂሎቱ ፡፡ ወትረኩስ ፡ ምድር ፡ ወትትከወስ ፡ ወይክህዱ ፡ ምክራብ ፡
 ቅድስትየ ፡ ወይትኤገሉ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይሥዓሩ ፡ መሥዋዕትየ ፡ ወቀርባንየ ፡፡ ወይ
 ጼውዎሙ ፡ ለውሉደ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ እምነ ፡ አበዊሆሙ ፡ ወእሞሙ ፡ ደቂቀ ፡
 ወአዋልደ ፡ ወይሰይጥሎሙ ፡ በበይናቲሆሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ አህጉር ፡ ወበ
 20 ሐውርት ፡፡ ወይቀትሉ ፡ ወይዪውው ፡ አረጋዌ ፡ ወይቀብፀው ፡ [እ]ደዊሆሙ ፡
 በደሞሙ ፡ ወይሔልዩ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ በሕሊናሆሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዘያበውዕ ፡³ መሥዋ
 ዕተ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡፡ ወይከውን ፡ ነገረ ፡ ግዕዞሙ ፡ ለእሙንቱ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡
 እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ያቀይሁ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ በቁጽለ ፡ ዕፅ ፡ ዘስሙ ፡ ሕና ፡
 ርኩስ ፡፡ ወይነግሡ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ገዳማት ፡ ብዙኅ ፡⁴ ወዲበ ፡ ባሕር ፡ ወበሐውርት ፡
 25 ወአህጉራት ፡፡ ወትጸንዕ ፡ ወትትለዓል ፡⁵ ዕዳሆሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥት ፡
 ወ|ያመዘብና ፡ ብዙኃን ፡⁶ አህጉረ ፡ ወበሐውርት ፡ በዕደዊሆሙ ፡ ርኩሳት ፡፡ fol. 94r
 ወይሣዓር ፡⁷ ግዕዛ ፡ ወአርአያሃ ፡ ለምድር ፡ እስመ ፡ ፀሐይ ፡ ወወርኅ ፡ ይበ
 ኪዩ ፡⁸ በውእቱ ፡ ጊዜ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘበጽሐ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ዓለም ፡ እምነ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ አሕ
 ዛብ ፡፡ ወሶበ ፡ ትራእዩ ፡ ከዋክብተ ፡ ትእምርታተ ፡ ያስተርኢ ፡ ወይሠዓር ፡ ጥበ
 30 በሙ ፡ ለጠቢባን ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ይሰመዩ ፡ ጠቢባነ ፡ ወነቢ
 ያተ ፡፡ ወይትናፈቁ ፡ በበይናቲሆሙ ፡ በዘ ፡ ይትጋዓዙ ፡ ወይትመዓዱ ፡⁹ ወይ

APPARATUS | 2 ² For "ብ". 21 ³ For "ው". 24 ⁴ For "ኃን" or "ኃት". 25 ⁵ For "ሌ". 26 ⁶ For "ኅ". 27 ⁷ For "ሠ/ሰ". 28 ⁸ For "ክ". 31 ⁹ For "ማ".

10 Matt. 21:31.
 11 Cf. Matt. 12:31; Mark 3:28–29.
 12 Matt. 10:32.
 13 John 16:2.
 14 Matt. 10:22.

Simon, for prostitutes, thieves, and tax collectors are going into the Kingdom of Heaven ahead of the Children of Israel.¹⁰ Truly I say to you, O Simon, I will abandon and forgive all sins of the Children of Israel and their blasphemy against the Son of Man, but those who blasphemed against the Holy Spirit and spoke evil words shall not be for-
 p. 95 5 given for them neither in this world nor in the one to come.¹¹ | Everyone who acknowledges me before people, I also shall acknowledge him before my Father and my holy angels who are in the heavens.¹² Know, O Simon, for behold, there will come a time when everyone who kills you will think that he is bringing an offering to God.¹³ You 10 will be hated by all people because of my name.¹⁴ They will hate and ridicule everyone who mentions my name with his mouth.¹⁵ All nations will harden their hearts like a rock against you.¹⁶

3 Know, O Simon, that, behold, nations will come out of the desert which will despise my people and will utter evil words against God the 15 like of which other nations like them have not uttered, saying what is not seemingly. The earth will be polluted and shaken. They will deny the shrine of my holy ones.¹⁷ They will fight to abolish my sacrifice and offering. They will take the children of my people captive from their fathers and mothers, boys as well as girls, and sell them to each 20 other in all cities and countries. They will kill and take old people captive and smear their hands with their blood. They will think in their mind that they are bringing sacrifice to God.¹⁸ The description of those people will be (such) that they paint their bodies red with the leaf of a plant called *henna*, the polluted one. They will reign over many 25
 p. 96 deserts, | over the seas, countries, and cities. Their hands will be
 fol. 94r hardened and raised against the kingdom. | They will plunder many cities and countries with their polluted hands. The nature and shape of the earth will be destroyed. For the sun and the moon will weep at that time because of what will befall on the world from these nations. 30 When you gaze at the stars, signs will appear and the wisdom of the wise will be nullified.¹⁹ For these nations are called wise and prophets. They divide among themselves over matters they revile and admonish each other. This is the rod of wrath,²⁰ which will come out from the

¹⁵ Cf. Matt. 5:11.

¹⁶ Matt. 24:9.

¹⁷ i.e. 'the faithful'. Or 'holy things', i.e. 'the sacrifice'.

¹⁸ John 16:2.

¹⁹ Cf. Isa. 29:14.

²⁰ Isa. 10:5.

እቲ፡ በትረ፡ መዓት፡ ዘትወፅዕ፡ እምብሔረ፡ ጽልመት፡ ወእምዘመደ፡
 ቁዳር፡ ወይዌልጡ፡ ትምህርትዮ ። ወባሕቲ፡ ኢይክሉ፡ ይወልጡ፡ ወያገ
 ብኡ፡ ኩሎ፡ ኃቤሆሙ፡ ኣለ፡ ለብዙኃን፡ እምነ፡ ምእመናን፡ ያኃይጥ
 ምሙ፡¹⁰ ወይከውኑ፡ ከማሆሙ ።

54 ብፀዓን፡ እለ፡ ይርሕቁ፡ {እለ፡ ይርሕቁ፡} እምኔሆሙ፡ ወለእለ፡ ይተልው
 ምሙ፡ ፤ አማን፡ እብለክሙ፡ በውእቲ፡ ጊዜ፡ ይበኪዩ፡¹¹ አድባር፡ ወአው
 ግር፡ ወይዮብሱ፡ አፍላገ፡ ማያት ። ወይትመዘበራ፡ መካናት፡ ወይትሐነጸ፡
 ምዝቡራት ።

Chapter 37

10 22 ወእእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ ጥልቀኝክሙ፡ ዕቁብ፡ ኃበ፡ አብ፡ ወአስማቲክሙ፡
 ጽሑፍ፡ ውስተ፡ መጻሕፍቲሁ፡ ወኢይትነገፍ፡ ወኢይወድቅ፡ አሐዱ፡ እም
 ሥዕርተ፡ ርእሰክሙ፡ እስመ፡ አነ፡ አዓቅብክሙ፡ እስከ፡ ጊዜ፡ እመጽእ፡ ኃቤ
 ክሙ፡ ። እእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ አሕዛብ፡ ይትፈራሥሑ፡ ወአንትሙሰ፡ ተሐዝኑ፡
 እስመ፡ ለሊክሙ፡ ኢኮንክሙ፡ እምነ፡ አሕዛብ፡ ዘእምሰብአ፡ ዝንቲ፡

15 ዓለም ። እመሰ፡ ኮንክሙ፡ እምኔሆሙ፡ እምተፈላጊኦክሙ፡ ከማሆሙ፡ በው
 ሰተ፡ ፍሥሐሆሙ ። ወለሊክሙ፡ አንትሙ፡ እምሰብአ፡ ዓለም፡ ደኃሪ፡ ዘድ
 ልው፡ ለክሙ፡ ውስቴቲ፡ ፈቲወትክሙ፡ ወኩሉ፡ ጸሕቅክሙ ።

23 እስመ፡ ናሁ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ ወአለበውኩክሙ፡ ወአንሰ፡ ካዕበ፡ እኡዝዘ
 ክሙ፡ ከመ፡ ትንቅሁ፡ እምቅድመ፡ ይብጻሕ፡ ጊዜሁ፡ ዘይከውን፡ ውስ

20 ቴቲ፡ ቀትል፡ ወኩናት፡ ወተመዝብሮ፡ እምሰብአ፡ ምሥራቅ፡ ወምዕራብ ።
 አእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ ንጉሠ፡ ምዕራብ፡ ውእቲ፡ ኃያል፡ ወጽኑዕ፡ በውስተ፡
 ቀትል፡ ወኩናት ። በከመ፡ ተነበዩ፡ በእንቲአሁ፡ ቀዲሙ፡ እምነቢያት፡
 ሊቅ፡ | ዳንኤል፡ ነቢይ፡ ወከማሁ፡ ይቤ፡ እስመ፡ ኩሎሙ፡ አራዊት፡ ወእን fol. 94v
 ሰሳ፡ ይፈርሁ፡ እምእንሰ፡ አንበሳ፡ ወይርእዱ፡ ቅድሜሁ፡ ወይገርሩ ። ወው

25 እቲ፡ ይነግሥ፡ ዲቤሃ፡ ለምድር፡ ወኩሎሙ፡ ነገሥታት፡ የሐልቁ፡ ወይጠ
 ፍኡ፡ ወያኃልፉ ።¹² ወይተርፍ፡ ንጉሠ፡ ምዕራብ፡ ባሕቲቲ፡ ወይከውን፡
 ሎቲ፡ መስፍን፡ ዘእምታሕቴሁ፡ ጽኑዓ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ፈድፋድ፡ ወተአዘዚ ።¹³
 ለእግዚኡ፡ ወለእግዚአብሔር ።

24 ወትትአኃዝ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ርትዕት፡ ብዩ፡ ዘኢያሐልቅ ።¹⁴ መንግሥቲ፡

30 ወስልጣኑ ።
 ወካዕበ፡ ይቤሎሙ፡ ለአርዳኢሁ፡ ሑሩ፡ ወስብኩ፡ ለኩሎ፡ በበልሳነ፡
 ብሔሩ ። ወአጥምቅምሙ፡ ለሰብእ፡ ውስተ፡ ኩሎ፡ አጽናፈ፡ ምድር፡ ወበ
 ሐውርት ። በስመ፡ አብ፡ ወወልድ፡ ወመንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ ። ወኩሎ፡ ዘየአ

APPARATUS | 4 ¹⁰ For የኅ". 6 ¹¹ For "ክ". 26 ¹² For ወዮ". 27 ¹³ For "ዛዚ. 29 ¹⁴ For "ዮ".

²¹ 'Decendants of Ismael' (Gen. 25:14), Arabs.

²² Cf. Luke 21:18.

country of darkness and from the people of Qedar.²¹ These will change my teaching. However, they cannot convert or veer everyone to them. Nevertheless, they will lure many of the faithful, and they will be like them.

4 Blessed are those who stay far from them and from (those) who follow them. Truly I say to you, at that time, mountains and hills will weep. Rivers of water will dry up. (Religious) centres will be plundered, and the plundered ones will be (re)built.’

Chapter 37

p. 131 **22** | ‘Know that your number is kept with the Father and your names 10
are written in his books. Not a single one from the hair of your head
will be thrown out or fall,²² because I will keep you until the time I
come to you. Know that nations²³ will rejoice but you will grief be-
cause you are not of the nations who are of the people of this world.²⁴
If you were of them, you would have rejoiced like them in their joy. 15
You are of the people of the latter world in which your desires and all
your wishes are prepared for you.

23 Behold, I have told you and warned you. Furthermore, I com-
mand you that you wake up before the time arrives in which killing,
p. 132 the arrow, and looting will take place between the people of east | and 20
west. Know that the king of the west is mighty and strong in war and
fol. 94v fight, as formerly | Daniel, head of the prophets, has prophesied about
him. Thus he said, all wild animals and beasts will fear the lion cub;
they will tremble before him and surrender.²⁵ He will be king over the
(the whole) earth. All kings will be finished; they will vanish and pass 25
away. Only the king of the west will remain. (Someone who is) very
firm in the faith will be for him a prince under him—he will be obedi-
ent to his lord and to God.

24 The Orthodox faith will be held by me whose kingdom and au-
thority have no end.’ 30

Furthermore, he said to his disciples: ‘Go and preach to all, each in
his local language. Baptize the people in all ends of the earth and coun-
tries in the name of the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit.²⁶
Everyone who believes in me and is baptized in my name will live

²³ Possibly ‘heathens’.

²⁴ Cf. John 16:20.

²⁵ Unidentified.

²⁶ Matt. 28:19.

ምን ፡ ብየ ፡ ወይጠመቅ ፡ በስምየ ፡ የሐዩ ፡ እስከ ፡ ለዓለም ፤፤ ወኩሉ ፡ ዘኢያኦ
ምን ፡ ብየ ፡ ወኢይጠመቅ ፡ በስምየ ፡ ይመውት ፡ ሞተ ፡ ዳግመ ፤፤
ወይሠዓር ፡ ትእዛዘ ፡ ሊቃናት ፡ ወስልጣናት ፤፤

25 ለብወኩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ናሁ ፡ ሠራቂ ፡ ይመጽእ ፡ ሌሊተ ፡ ኢተአምርዎ ፡ ወኢ
5 ትሰምዑ ፡ ድምዖ ፡ ጊዜ ፡ ይመጽእ ፤፤ አሌላ ፡ ለኩራዚ ፡ ወለቤተ ፡ ሳይዳ ፡
ወአሌ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይዌስኩ ፡ ወያመክዓብቱ ፡ ዕልወተ ፡ ወክህደተ ፤፤ አእ
ምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ባቢሎን ፡ ወፋርስ ፡ የሐዝኑ ፡ ወይላህው ፡ ወይመጽኡ ፡ ሰብእ ፡
ጸሊማነ ፡ ገጽ ፡ ወጽልህዋነ ፡ ልብ ፡ እምነ ፡ መንገለ ፡ የማን ፤፤ ወይክድን ፡ ጽል
መት ፡ ገጽ ፡ ለምድር ፡ ወይበዝኅ ፡ ሀኬት ፡ ወድካም ፡ በውእቱ ፡ ጊዜ ፤፤ ወይከ
10 ውን ፡ በውእቱ ፡ አዝማን ፡ በትረ ፡ ቀጥዋዓ ፡ ወመዓት ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ምዕ
መናንየ ፡ እምነ ፡ ከሀዲያን ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፤፤ ወያኃልፍ ፡¹⁵ መንግሥተ ፡
ፋርስ ፡ ወመንግሥተ ፡ እለ ፡ ዐውዳ ።

26 ወይመጽኡ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ጸሊማን ፡ ከመ ፡ አንበጣ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ገዳም ፡ እለ ፡
ሰሞሙ ፡ ጉግ ፡ ወማጉግ ፡ ዘአጸዎሙ ፡ እስክንድር ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ በሠለስቱ ፡ ማኅ
15 ተም ፡ ዘኢይትፈታሕ ፡ ወውእቶሙ ፡ እምዘመደ ፡ አብርሃም ። ወይወርድ ፡
ላዕሌሆሙ ፡ ጽልመተ ፡¹⁶ ወተጸልሞ ፡¹⁷ ይእቲ ፡ ልበ ፡ ምእመናን ። ወይወፅእ ፡
እምገዳም ፡ | አድግ ፡ ተሐራዊ ፡ ወያማስን ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ምድረ ፡ ዘሰሙ ፡ ማሕ fol. 95r
ምድ ፡ ወትርጓሜሁ ፡ አርዌ ፡ ርኩስ ።
ስምዑ ፡ ኦኦኃውየ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ እለ ፡ ያሜንዩ ፡ ሕሡመ ፡ ወእለ ፡ የሐ
20 ስሙ ፡¹⁸ ሠናየ ፡ ወግብረ ፡ ሠናይ ፡ ይሬስዩ ፡ እኩየ ፡ ወግብረ ፡ እኩይ ፡ ይሬስ
ዩ ሠናየ ፤፤

27 ወይወፅዕ ፡ ወልደ ፡ ሐጉል ፡ እምነ ፡ መካን ፡ ዘአቅደምኩ ፡ ለክሙ ፡ ነገረ ፡
ወይነግሥ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ክቡራን ፡ በኃይሉ ፡ ወበሰይፋ ፡ ወይነትኡ ፡ በቅድ
ሜሁ ፡ ምዕመናን ፡ እለ ፡ የአምኑ ፤፤ ወበእገሪሁ ፡ ይከይድ ፡ መንግሥትየ ፡
25 ወየሀውክ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ ወያስተጋብዕ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ ኃቤሁ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ወይሬስ
ዮሙ ፡ አግብርቲሁ ፡ ወመክየደ ፡ እገሪሁ ፡ ወይገርሩ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ በቅድሜሁ ፡
ወይገብር ፡ ዘፈቀደ ፡ ወያመዘብር ፡ አህጉረ ፡ ወበሐውርተ ፡ ወመካናተ ፡ ሕኑ
ጸተ ፡ ወየሐንጽ ፡ ምዘቡራተ ፡ በከመ ፡ ነገርኩክሙ ፡ ቀዲሙ ፤፤

28 ወያሐንጽ ፡¹⁹ ሎቱ ፡ ወይእቲ ፡ ዘትሰመይ ፡ መካ ፡ ወያስተማስላ ፡ ህየንተ ፡
30 ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ቤተ ፡ መቅደስየ ፡ የኃሥዎ ፡ ወየሐውሩ ፡ ኃቤሁ ፡ ኩሉ ፡

APPARATUS | 11 ¹⁵ For ወየ”. 16 ¹⁶ For ”ት ፡ . | ¹⁷ For ”ት”” 20 ¹⁸ For ያ”. 29 ¹⁹ For ”የ”.

²⁷ Mark 16:15–17; 28:19.
²⁸ Cf. 1 Cor. 15:24–25.

forever. And everyone who does not believe in me and is not baptized in my name will die a second death.²⁷

And the commandments of chiefs and authorities shall be nullified.²⁸

25 Beware, therefore, for the thief comes by the night.²⁹ When he comes, you will neither recognize him nor hear his voice. Woe to Corazin and Bethsaida,³⁰ and woe to those who add and duplicate heresy and denial. Know that Babylon and Persia will be in grief and mourn. And there will come people of black faces and deluding hearts from the direction of the right. And darkness will cover the face of the earth. At that time, lethargy and exhaustion will increase. In those times, rod of wrath and anger | will fall upon all my believers, from deniers upon Christians. The kingdom of Persia and the kingdom of those round it will pass.

26 Black people will come like locusts out of the desert, whose names are Gog and Magog, whom King Alexander had locked up with three unlockable seals.³¹ They are from the relatives of Abraham. Darkness will come down upon them; and it will darken the heart of the faithful. | A *Tāḥara*³² donkey will come out of the desert and will corrupt the whole earth; his name is Maḥməd which means ‘filthy serpent’.

Listen, O my brothers: there will come people who will make the ugly beautiful and the beautiful ugly. They will make a good deed evil, and the evil deed they will make good.

27 The Son of Perdition³³ will come out from the place that I told you before. He will reign over honourable peoples by his power and his sword. The faithful who believe (in me) will flee from his presence. His feet will trample my kingdom and he will disturb my people. He will gather all my people together to him. He will make them his slaves and his footstools. All will submit to his presence. He will do whatever he wants; he will plunder cities, countries, and edifices (of religious) centres, and he will build the plundered ones, as I told you before.

28 And he will build (a centre) for himself. This is the one that will be called Mecca. He will liken it to, (and will want it to be) in place of,

²⁹ Allusion to Matt. 24:43–44.

³⁰ Matt. 11:21.

³¹ Budge 1933, 167–168.

³² Arabic, *al-ṣaḥara*’.

³³ Cf. John 17:12; 2 Thess. 2:3; *Māṣḥafā kidan*, in Beylot 1984, 4.

ሕዝብ ፡ እምነ ፡ ምሥራቅ ፡ ወምዕራብ ፡ ወእምነ ፡ ሰሜን ፡ ወደቡብ ፡ ወእም
ኩሉ ፡ አጽናፈ ፡ ምድር ፡ ወይገብር ፡ ፍትሐ ፡ ወርትዓ ፡ በቀዳሚት ፡ ጥንተ ፡
መንግሥቱ ፡ ወይትኤገል ፡ ንዋያተ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ በመዋዕለ ፡ መንግሥቱ ፡ ኃላ
ፊት ፡ ወይሔሊ ፡ በልቡ ፡ ከመ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ወሀቦ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ወይነ
5 ግሥ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ምድር ፡ ቅድስት ፡ ወይጸልእ ፡ ምዕመናነ ፡ እለ ፡ የእምነ ፡
ብየ ፡

29 ወይሬሲ ፡ መስፍነ ፡ እምታሕቲሁ ፡ ዘእምክቡራን ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወውእቲኒ ፡
ይወዲ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ልቦ ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ ጽልአ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይትመካህ ፡ ላዕለ
ክሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ወይበውዕ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ልብክሙ ፡ ፍርሃት ፡ ወኑፋቄ ፡
10 ለብውኬ ፡ ኦአኃውየ ፡ ወኢትትልውዎ ፡ እስመ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ተኩላ ፡ ወመ
ሳጢ ፡²⁰ ነምር ፡ ጸናሂ ፡ ወውእቱ ፡

30 የሐንጽ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ገዳም ፡ ወያስተማስላ ፡ ከመ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ወይ
ብል ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ቤተ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ኃቦ ፡ መካን ፡ ዘየሐ
ንጽ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ቤቶ ፡ ወበህየ ፡ አጽደፍክዎ ፡ ወነጸሕክዎ ፡ ወአውደቅዎ ፡
15 ለሊቀ ፡ ሰራዊት ፡ ዲያብሎስ ፡ እምነ ፡ መንበሩ ፡ እመልዕልተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡
ሶቦ ፡ አለው ፡ ትእዛዝየ ፡ ወዐበየ ፡ ገቢረ ፡ ፈቃድየ ፡ ወበህየ ፡ ረሰየ ፡ መንበሮ ፡
ወኃቤሁ ፡ የሐውሩ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ አራዊት ፡ ሕሱማት ፡ ወ|ውእቶሙ ፡ ተንበ fol. 95v
ላት ፡ እኩያን ፡ ወበህየ ፡ ማኅደሩ ፡ ለብኤል ፡ ዜቡል ፡ ሊቀ ፡ አጋንንት ፡

31 ወይከውን ፡ በውስቲቱ ፡ ጸልዮቶሙ ፡ ለዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ብዙኃን ፡ ወዐቢ
20 ያን ፡ ወይብሉ ፡ በውስቲቱ ፡ ንረክብ ፡ ሥርየተ ፡ ወበእንተ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ይሔልዩ ፡
ወይብሉ ፡ ከመ ፡ ቤትየ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ይሠዓር ፡ ሊተ ፡ ወውእቲሰ ፡ ኢይሠ
ዓር ፡ ስምየ ፡ እምኔሁ ፡ ወኢያኃልፍ ፡²¹ ወይከውን ፡ መዋዕሊሆሙ ፡ ለዝንቱ ፡
ሕዝብ ፡ ሕዳጠ ፡

ለብውኬ ፡ ኦአኃውየ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ እምነ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ዘውእቱ ፡ ዓንቄ ፡ ዘይመ
25 ሰጥ ፡ ወይቀጠቅጥ ፡ ወይሰብር ፡ አዕፅምተ ፡

32 እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይብሉ ፡ ወይትናገሩ ፡ ወይሬስዩ ፡ እሙነ ፡ ነገረ ፡ ወያአ
ምንምሙ ፡ ለሰብእ ፡²² ወይመይጥምሙ ፡ ለግዕዙሙ ፡ ወያሜንዩ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ እከ
ዮሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ ብዙኃን ፡ ይሔልዩ ፡ በእንቲአሆሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ኅሩያን ፡ ለብ
ውኬ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ከመ ፡ አስዋክ ፡ ወአሜክላ ፡ እሉ ፡
30 አሕዛብ ፡ ርኩሳን ፡ ዘይበውዑ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መቅደሰ ፡ ቅድስትየ ፡ እንተ ፡ ይእቲ ፡
ኢየሩሳሌም ፡

APPARATUS | 11 ²⁰ For መ”? See Matt. 7:15. 22 ²¹ For ”የ”. 27 ²² For ሰ”.

³⁴ See Graf 1944, 50, where he quotes at-Ṭabarī for the latter’s belief that Mecca has taken the place of Jerusalem.

Jerusalem, my sanctuary.³⁴ All (of his) people will seek it and go to it from east and west, from north and south, and from all ends of the earth. He will exercise righteousness and justice³⁵ at the very beginning of his reign. But during the time of his transient reign, he will violate people's possession. | He will think in his mind that God has given him a kingdom. He will reign over the Holy Land. He will hate the faithful who believe in me.

29 He will appoint a prince under him for the honoured³⁶ Jews. I³⁷ will put hatred of the Jews in the hearts of the kings in order that they may not boast against you. And, because of this, fear and doubts will enter your hearts.

Beware, therefore, O my brothers, do not follow him. For he is a ravenous wolf, a tiger lying in waiting.

30 He will build a house in the desert and will liken it to Jerusalem and say, "This is a house of God." Know that at the place where he will build his house, there I have hurled over the precipice, flung, and thrown down the Devil, head of the army, from his throne in the high heavens when he violated my command and refused to do my will.³⁸

And (so) he made his throne there. All ugly animals go to him. And | these are the wicked Muslims. And the abode of Beelzebub, head of the demons,³⁹ is there.

31 The praying of these multitudinous and great people will be in it. They will say, "We find atonement in it." Therefore, they think and say that my house Jerusalem will be abolished against me. But my name in it will not be abolished nor will it pass. The days of these people will be few.

Beware of this, O my brothers, about these people: they are a hawk which ravens, crushes, and breaks bones.

32 They will say and talk (much), | and will make (their) word believable, and will persuade people to believe them. They will convert them to their disposition. They will make their wickedness look good for them. For many will think of them that they are chosen ones. Therefore, beware of this, that they are people like thorns and thistle. These people are filthy. They will enter into the shrine of my Holy One, which is Jerusalem.

35

³⁵ Taken from the Psalms; see Ps. 88:15/89:14 and Ps. 96/97:2.

³⁶ Arabic, *ahbar* ('affair of').

³⁷ Lit. 'he'.

³⁸ Grébaut 1920, 564–566; Trumpp 1882, 29–36.

³⁹ Matt. 12:24.

33 ያእምር ፡ ወይጠይቅ ፡ ግብሩ ፡²³ ኩሉ ፡ ዘያነብብ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ መጽሐፈ ፡
 ወይርሐቅ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡፤
 ወአንትሙሰ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡²⁴ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ዘየሐውሩ ፡
 ለፌ ፡ ወለፌ ፡ ወያንሶስው ፡ ገዳመ ፡ ወባሕረ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ምክሆሙ ፡ ፍት
 5 ወተ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ ወከርሆሙ ፡ አምላኮሙ ፡ ወጸሊም ፡ ገጸሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ ኃጢ
 አት ፡ ወብዙኃን ፡ ቂም ፡ ወመዓት ፡ ወያፈጥኑ ፡ ለዕበድ ፡ ጠይቁ ፡ እስመ ፡
 አነ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ኢያኃድገክሙ ፡²⁵ ወእከውን ፡ ምስሌክሙ ፡

34 ኢትፍርሁ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ወአእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አቀውም ፡ ኩናተ ፡
 ማእከለ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ እዘርዎሙ ፡ ወአንትሆሙ ፡ ወአነሥእ ፡ ፀብዐ ፡ ወቀ
 10 ትለ ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ ፡፤ ወእሬሲ ፡ ብዙኃን ፡ ይትሐገሉ ፡ በብልሐ ፡ ሰይፍ ፡ ለብ
 ውኬ ፡ ኦአኃውየ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ኃጥአን ፡ በከመ ፡
 ተነበየ ፡ ዳንኤል ፡ ነቢይ ፡ በእንቲአሆሙ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይብል ፡ እስመ ፡ ኢየሩሳ
 ሌም ፡ ትትመዘበር ፡ በዕደ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ያማስንዋ ፡ ለኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ቅድ
 ስት ፡፤

15 ጽንዑ ፡ ወተዐቀቡ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ኢየኃድገክሙ ፡ ወበኃበ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌምሂ ፡
 እሂሉ ፡ ምስሌክሙ ፡፤

35 ወባሕቱ ፡ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ አግዋሪሁ ፡ ለቤ
 ትየ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ መካ|ን ፡ ዘይትሐነጽ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ያቀንኡ ፡²⁶ ወይ
 ትዓደው ፡ ትእዛዘየ ፡ ወያሐንጹ ፡²⁷ ኢብያቲሆሙ ፡ ለጸልዮ ፡ ጸሎቶሙ ፡ ርከኮ
 20 ስት ፡ በቅድመ ፡ ቤትየ ፡፤ ወይጸልኡ ፡ ፍቁራንየ ፡ ወዘንተ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ያመክር
 ዎሙ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ በእንቲአየ ፡፤

fol. 96r

36 ለብውኬ ፡ ኦአ[ኃ]ውየ ፡ እምነ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ሙሱናን ፡ እስመ ፡ ይበ
 ልዑ ፡ መብልዓ ፡ ጥዑመ ፡ ወያኃድጉ ፡ መብልዓ ፡ ሕሱመ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ጥዲና ፡
 ሥጋሆሙ ፡ ኃላፊ ፡፤ ወይለብሱ ፡ አልባሰ ፡ ልምሎማተ ፡ ወቀጠንተ ፡ በእንተ ፡
 25 መዋዕሊሆሙ ፡ ከንቱ ፡ ዘያኃልፍ ፡²⁸ ከመ ፡ ሳሬት ፡ ወይትቃተሉ ፡ በበይናቲ
 ሆሙ ፡ ወአብአኒ ፡²⁹ በእንቲአሆሙ ፡ ወእምኔሆሙ ፡ ይቀትል ፡ ወልዶ ፡ ወወል
 ድኒ ፡ ይቀትል ፡ አቡሁ ፡ ወይትኤገል ፡ እኅ ፡ ንዋየ ፡ እኅሁ ፡፤ ወበእንተ ፡
 ዝንቱ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ፍጡን ፡ ጎልፈቶሙ ፡

ወኢትጎድጉ ፡ አንስቲያክሙ ፡ ይትራከባ ፡ ምስለ ፡ አንስቲያሆሙ ፡ ወለውሉድ
 30 ክሙ ፡ ኢትጎድጉ ፡ ይደመሩ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ውሉድሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ኢይኒጥዎሙ ፡ በነ
 ገረ ፡ ዕልወት ፡ ወኢይክህዱ ፡ ብየ ፡፤

37 ለብውኬ ፡ ወተዐቀቡ ፡ እምክንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ እለ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡ በደኃሪ ፡ መዋ
 ዕል ፡ እምዘመደ ፡ ካም ፡ ወልደ ፡ ኖኅ ፡ ወይከውኑ ፡ ግዙፋን ፡ ክሳድ ፡ ወጽኑ
 ዓነ ፡ ልብ ፡ ኢይፈርሀዎ ፡ ለሞት ፡ ወያሐውሩ ፡³⁰ ኃቤሁ ፡ ወይትነሥኡ ፡ ወይነ
 35 ግሡ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ሻነገሥት ፡ ፩እምድጎረ ፡ ፩ ወኖኃ ፡³¹ መዋዕሊሆሙ ፡ ፲ሱ

APPARATUS | 1 ²³ For "ሮ" ፡ or "ሮሙ" ፡. 3 ²⁴ For "በ" ፡? 7 ²⁵ For ኢየ". 18 ²⁶ For ይ"?" 19 ²⁷
 For ወየ". 25 ²⁸ For ዘየ". 26 ²⁹ For ወአብኒ ፡? 34 ³⁰ For ወየ". 35 ³¹ For "ኑ".

33 Let everyone who reads this book know and understand (their) deeds and stay far away from them.

As for you, people, know (the disposition of these) peoples.⁴⁰ For they are peoples who stroll here and there. They roam the desert and the sea. Their boast will be the lust of their body. Their god is their belly.⁴¹ Their faces are black because of sin, and they are of much rancor and wrath. They hasten to foolishness. Understand that I will not forsake you in any (situation), but will be with you.

34 Do not fear any of them. Know that I will set arrow among this people. I will scatter them and I will put them to flight. I will raise 10 quarrel and war against them. And I will make many perish by the sharpness of the sword. Beware of them, therefore, O my brothers, for they are sinful people, as the Prophet Daniel has prophesied about them, saying that Jerusalem will be plundered in the hands of these people. They shall devastate the holy Jerusalem.⁴² 15

Be steadfast and guard yourselves, for I will not forsake you. In Jerusalem, too, I will be with you.

p. 136 **35** Know, however, | that this people will be neighbours of my
fol. 96r house at every place | which will be built in my name. They will be en-
vious and will violate my commandment. They will build their houses 20
for praying their filthy prayers in front of my house. They hate my be-
loved ones. And so, the Jews will tempt them (to) all this because of
me.

36 Beware, therefore, O my brothers, of these corrupt people. For they eat tasty food and avoid bad food for the sake of the health of 25 their transient body. They wear soft and fine clothes for their vain time which will pass like spider web. They will fight each other. A father for them, among them, will kill his son, and the son will kill his father. A brother will despoil his brother's money. For this reason, their passing away will be swift. 30

Do not let your women meet their women, and do not let your children mix with their children, lest they lure them with perverse words and lest these deny me.

37 Beware, therefore, and guard yourselves from this people who will come at latter days from the race of Ham, son of Noah. They will 35 be stiff-necked and hard-hearted. They do not fear death. They will go

⁴⁰ *Aḥzab* ('nations') cannot be subject, as given here, because Jesus is not addressing nations but his Apostles.

⁴¹ Philem. 3:19.

⁴² Cf. Dan. 9:2.

ባሌያት ፡ በከመ ፡ ተነበየ ፡ ዳንኤል ፡ በእንተዝ ፡ ወመንግሥቶሙ ፡ ይከውን ፡
እምነ ፡ ቪቤት ፡ ወይእቲ ፡ እምነ ፡ ምስር ፡ ወእምነ ፡ ደማስቆ ፡ ወእምነ ፡
መካ ፡ ወንጉሥ ፡ ሣልስ ፡ አፄእምነ ፡ ጥልቁ ፡ እሉ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ገጹ ፡
ጸሊመ ፡ እምኩሎሙ ፡ ነገሥት ፡

5 38 ይእኅዝ ፡ ወያገርር ፡ አህጉራተ ፡ ወበሐውርተ ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ ወያነትያሙ ፡
ለኩሉ ፡ ዘይትቃወሞ ፡ ወዘይትቃተሎ ፡ ወይነጽሐሙ ፡ እመናብርቲሆሙ ፡
ወይገብር ፡ በከመ ፡ ፈቀደ ፡ ልቡ ፡ ወይቀትል ፡ ወራዙተ ፡ ወያመዘብር ፡
አህጉራተ ፡ ዐበይተ ፡ እምነ ፡ ሀገረ ፡ ደማስቆ ፡ ወያነትአሙ ፡ ለኩሎሙ ፡
ዘይመጽኡ ፡ ኃቤሁ ፡ እምሰብአ ፡ ብሔር ፡ ወይዪውው ፡ አንስቲያሆሙ ፡
10 ወይቀትል ፡ ወራዙቶሙ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ግዕዙ ፡ ዘይትዓዶ ፡
እምግዕዘ ፡ ነገሥት ፡

39 ወልቡ ፡ ይርሕቅ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ወክቡት ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ምግባራቲሁ ፡ ወያፈ fol. 96v
ጥን ፡ ለክዲወ ፡ ደም ፡³² ወይቀትል ፡ ሊቃውንተ ፡ ዐበይተ ፡ ወያኃሥሣ ፡³³
ወያፈቅራ ፡ ለሀገረ ፡³⁴ ዘማዊት ፡ እንተ ፡ ይእቲ ፡ ደማስቆ ፡ ወበዕደዊሁ ፡ ያጠፍ
15 አሙ ፡ ለጸላእቱ ፡ ወኢይድኅን ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ወኢአሐዱሂ ፡ ወያስተጋብእ ፡
ኩሎ ፡ ንዋያተ ፡ ወይዘግብ ፡ ውስቲታ ፡ ወይትኃሥሥ ፡ ለኅሂአ ፡ ወርቅ ፡ ወብ
ሩር ፡ በእንተ ፡ ሤጠ ፡ መቃብር ፡ ለምውታን ፡
ወይትጋብኡ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ነገሥታት ፡ ዓላዊያን ፡ ወከሀዲያን ፡ ኃቤሃ ፡ ምስለ ፡
ንዋያቲሆሙ ፡ ወመዛግብቲሆሙ ፡ ርኩስ ፡ እስመ ፡ ይእቲ ፡ ጽንዕት ፡ ወድን
20 ንት ፡ መንገለ ፡ አንጸረ ፡ ሲኦል ፡ ወታስተጋብእ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ደቂቃ ፡ ርኩሳነ ፡
ከመ ፡ እንተ ፡ ታስተጋብዕ ፡ ዶርሆ ፡ እጐሊሃ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ ክነፊሃ ፡ ትጸድፍ ፡
ወትወድቅ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ መዓምቀ ፡ ሲኦል ፡ ይእቲ ፡ ደማስቆ ፡

40 ወከማሁ ፡ ትከውን ፡ በደኃሪ ፡ መዋዕል ፡ ወኩሉ ፡ ዘይገብር ፡ በሥምረተ ፡
ዚአየ ፡ ኢይነክዮ ፡ በሕሱም ፡ ለአሐዱ ፡ እምኔክሙ ፡ ወኢበመጥባሕት ፡ ወበበ
25 ትር ፡ ወኢበጥብጣቤ ፡ ወባሕቱ ፡ ያሌዕለክሙ ፡ ወየዐቢዮክሙ ፡ ወያከብረ
ክሙ ፡ ወይሠይመክሙ ፡
ሉብውኬ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወኢትክሥቱ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ኅቡዓቲ
ክሙ ፡ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ብዙኅ ፡ እምነ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ይተልው
ዎሙ ፡ ለሕዝብ ፡ ዘአቅደምኩ ፡ ነገረ ፡ ወእሙንቲሂ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ ድልዋነ ፡
30 ለተበቀሎትየ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ኢያኃድገክሙ ፡ ወእሂሉ ፡ ምስሌክሙ ፡ እስከ ፡
ለዓለም ፡ ተፈሥሐ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አስተጋብእክሙ ፡ በከመ ፡ ያኃቅፍ ፡³⁵
ዶርሆ ፡ ዕጐሊሁ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ ክነፊሁ ፡ ወተኃሠዩ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እሂሉ ፡ ምስሌ

APPARATUS | 13 ³² Cf. በሊኅ ፡ እገሪሆሙ ፡ ለክዲወ ፡ ደም ፡ (Gə'əz) Ps. 13:3. | ³³ For "የ". 14 ³⁴
For "ር ፡. 31 ³⁵ For የ".

⁴³ 622 (the beginning of Islam) + (10 × 49) = 1112 EC/CE.

to it and rise up; and from them forty kings will reign consecutively. The length of their days will be ten weeks,⁴³ as Daniel has prophesied about it.⁴⁴ Their reign will be from three houses. That is, from Cairo, from Damascus, and from Mecca. The colour of the third king—
 p. 137 of their numbers—will be | darker than all the (other) kings. 5

38 He will occupy and subdue many cities and countries. He will put to flight everyone who will oppose him. He will topple them from their thrones, and will do as his heart wants. He will kill young men. He will plunder big cities and the country of Damascus.⁴⁵ He will put to flight all of the nationals who will come to him. He will take their 10 women captives and will kill their young men. Because of this, his bearing will become excessive compared to the bearing of (other) kings.

39 His heart will be far from them. All his deeds will be (done) fol. 96v secretly. He will | hasten to spill blood. He will kill the great chiefs. He will look for and love the adulterous city, which is Damascus. He will destroy his enemies with his (own) hands. Not one will be delivered from them. He will collect all properties and store (them) up in it. He will search for gold and silver (pieces) for the purchase of graves for the dead.⁴⁶ 20

All perverse and denying kings will assemble in (Damascus) with their filthy money and treasure. For (the city) is stubborn and bent in the direction of Hades. It will gather all its filthy children ‘as a hen gathers its chicks under its wings’.⁴⁷ (Damascus) will be hurled over the precipice and fall down to the depth of Hades. 25

40 This is what it will be in the latter days. Nothing bad—be it with a knife or a stave, or scourge—will happen to anyone of you who acts according to my will. Rather, he will exalt you, extol you, honour you, and appoint you.

Beware, therefore, of the Jews. Do not reveal your secrets to them. 30 Know that many people from the Jews will follow the people about whom I spoke earlier. They will be ready to take revenge on me but I p. 138 will not forsake you, but live with you forever.⁴⁸ | Rejoice, for I will gather you as the hen broods its chicks. Be glad, for I will be with you.

⁴⁴ $10 \times 49 = 490$ years. The projected end is 622 (the beginning) + 490 = 1112 EC.

⁴⁵ Arabic, *mašriq* (‘east’).

⁴⁶ This could be just an attempt to connect it to Matt. 27:3–10 rather than a report of an historical event.

⁴⁷ Matt. 23:37; Luke 13:34

⁴⁸ Matt. 28:20.

ክሙ ፡። ወይቀርብ ፡ አድኅኖትየ ፡ ኃቤክሙ ፡ ወእሰምዕ ፡ አስተብቀሃየተክሙ ፡
ወጽራኅክሙ ፡።³⁶

41 ለብውኬ ፡ እምነ ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ ዘይወፅዕ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ገዳም ፡ የማን ፡³⁷ ወመሳ
ፍንቲሁ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወእምነ ፡ ውሉደ ፡ ዕኅወ ፡
5 አቡሁ ፡ ወኢያማስኑ ፡ ትእዛዞ ፡ ወይገብሩ ፡ ሕገ ፡ ለኩሉ ፡ ዘይተልዎሙ ፡ በእ
ንተ ፡ ጸሊኦተ ፡ ኪያክሙ ፡ ወኢትሕዘኑ ፡ እምእንታክቲ ፡ ወአነ ፡ እሄሉ ፡
ምሰሌክሙ ፡ እስከ ፡ ለዓለም ።

42 አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ዛቲ ፡ መንግሥት ፡ ትነግሥ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ግብጽ ፡ ወፋርስ ፡
ወላዕለ ፡ ምድረ ፡ እልሐውፍ ፡ ወላዕለ ፡ ምድረ ፡ ካም ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ጽልእ ፡
10 ወቀትል ፡ ማእከሌሆሙ ፡ ብዙኅ ፡ እምነ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ምሥራቅ ፡ ወምዕራብ ።
ወእሙንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ይፈንው ፡ አዋዴ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ሃይማኖቶሙ ፡ ለለኩሉ ፡
ዕለት ፡ ፎጊዜ ፡ ወስደቶሙኒ ፡³⁸ ከመ ፡ ሰደተ ፡³⁹ አይሁድ ፡ ወይነግሡ ፡
ካዕበ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ምድረ ፡ ምስር ፡ ወይእቲ ፡ ሀገረ ፡ መንግሥት ፡ እንተ ፡ እምኔሃ ፡
ይወፅእ ፡ ሐሊብ ፡ ወመዓር ፡

fol. 97r

15 43 ወይፈርህምሙ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ወይሰጠው ፡ ለትእዛዞሙ ፡ ወይር
ዕዱ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ነገሥተ ፡ ምድር ፡ እምነ ፡ እከዮሙ ፡ ወይፀውሩ ፡ ነገሥተ ፡⁴⁰
አምኃ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ክብረ ፡ መንግሥቶሙ ። ወይመልኩ ፡ አጋዕዝተ ፡ ወይሬሰይ
ዎሙ ፡ አግብርተ ፡ እምነ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ፍጥረተ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ እስከ ፡ ህንደኬ ፡ ወካ
ዕበ ፡ ይፀውር ፡ ኃቤሁ ፡ አምኃ ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ጺን ፡።

20 44 ለብውኬ ፡ አኃውየ ፡ ውዕየተ ፡ መዋዕለ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ወኢትክህዱ ፡
ስምየ ፡ እስመ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ ይእዜ ፡ ትገብኡ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ዐውደ ፡ ምኩኖን ፡ ወይፈ
ትሐ ፡ ላዕሌክሙ ፡ ቅትለተ ፡ ወሞተ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ኦርምሙ ፡ ወተዓገሱ ፡
ወኢትክህዱ ፡ ብየ ፡ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ ፡ ይበ
25 ናነ ፡ ወአግማለ ፡ ርጉማነ ፡ ዘአሕረምኩ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ኦሪት ፡ በልሳነ ፡ ሙሴ ፡
ኅሩይየ ፡ ወፍቁርየ ፡ እስመ ፡ ሊቆሙ ፡ ወነቢዮሙ ፡ ፈትሐሙ ፡ ውእቱ ፡
እንዘ ፡ ይፃረር ፡ ወይትዓደው ፡ ለትእዛዝየ ፡ ወያገብኦሙ ፡ ለአኃዊክሙ ፡ ወይ
መይጦሙ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ሃይማኖቱ ፡ ርኩስት ፡

45 ወኩሉ ፡ ዘይጸንዕ ፡ በሃይማኖት ፡ ርትዕት ፡ እስከ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ ሞቱ ፡ የሐዩ ፡
30 በደኃሪት ፡ ዕለት ፡ ሕይወተ ፡ ዘለዓለም ፡።
ለብው ፡ አኃውየ ፡ ውእተ ፡ መዋዕለ ፡ ወዘንተ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ወኩሉ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ዘይ
ተልዎሙ ፡ የኃሥሥ ፡ ሢመተ ፡ ለርእሱ ፡ ወይገብሩ ፡ መንክራተ ፡ ወያበ

APPARATUS | 2 ³⁶ For "ኅ" (object). 3 ³⁷ For የማኖዊ ፡ or ዘየማን ፡. 12 ³⁸ For "ሰግደ". | ³⁹ For ሰግደ". 16 ⁴⁰ For "ት".

My salvation will be near. I shall hear your supplication and your outcries.

41 Beware, therefore, of the king who will come forth from the desert of the right. His princes will be from among the Jews and from the children of his father's brother. So they will not disregard his orders. They will lay down rules to all who follow them, because of hating you. Do not grieve because of these. I will be with you forever.

fol. 97r **42** Know that that kingship will reign over Egypt, Persia, and over the land of al-Ḥawf,⁴⁹ and over the land | of Ham.⁵⁰ There will be much quarrelling and fight among the people of east and west. These 10 people will send out five times a day an announcer about their faith. Their worship is like the worship of the Jews. They will also reign over the land of Egypt. This is the city of the kingdom from which milk and honey comes forth.⁵¹

43 All peoples will fear them. They will respond to their orders. All 15 kings of the earth will tremble from their cruelty. Kings will carry presents because of the honour of their reign. They will subjugate free people from all types of people, up to India, and make them slaves. p. 139 Also | the king of China will carry presents to him.

44 Beware, therefore, my brothers, of the fervour of the days of this 20 people. Do not deny my name, for, at that time, you will enter into the court of judgement, and they will sentence you with execution and death because of my name. Keep quiet and endure; do not deny me. Know that this people about whom I have told you will eat every beast, defiled wild animals, ugly and despised dogs, and cursed camels, (and 25 all) which I have had proscribed in the Torah in the tongue of my chosen and beloved Moses. For their chief and their prophet will have absolved them (of my proscription), antagonizing and violating my commandment.⁵² He will bring your brothers to his side, and convert them to his filthy faith. 30

45 Anyone who is steadfast in the right faith until the day of his death will live an eternal life in the latter day.⁵³

Beware, my brothers, of the time and this people. Every man who follows them will seek appointment for himself. They will work won-

⁴⁹ That is, Yemen.

⁵⁰ Probably Ethiopia or Sudan.

⁵¹ Num. 16:13.

⁵² *Qālemāntos*: 'They will eat what is proscribed; no one will be able to stop their lust.'

⁵³ Cf. Matt. 10:22.

ዝኑ፡ ነገረ፡ በውስተ፡ ሕገ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ዘፈጠሩ፡ ካልአ፡ ግዕዝ፡ እምኃቤ
ሆሙ፡ ወይትጋደሉ፡ እሙንቲ፡ ከመ፡ ይሥዓሩ፡ ሕግዩ ፤፤

46 ወይከውን፡ ንጉሠ፡ ዝንቲ፡ ሕዝብ፡ በደኃሪ፡ መዋዕል ፤፤ ወይሰየም ፡
ሰሙ፡ ከመ፡ ካህን፡ ወበመዋዕሌሁ፡ ለውእቲ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ ዘተሰይመ ፤፤ አአ
5 ትት፡ መንግሥተ፡ እምኔሁ፡ ወአጠፍአሙ፡ ለኩሎሙ፡ ኢትፍርሁ፡ እምነ፡
ምንዳቤ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ይረክበክሙ፡ ጸእቀ ፡ ዓለም ፤፤ ወኢታሕልዩ ፡⁴¹ ከመ ፡ አልብ fol. 97v
ክሙ ፡ መድኅነ ፡ በዝንቲ ፡

47 አእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ ዝንቲ፡ ሕዝብ፡ ያኃልፉ፡⁴² ወትዕምርተ፡ ልህቀት፡⁴³
መዋዕሊሆሙ፡ ፀሐይ፡ ይፀልም፡ በመንፈቀ፡ መዓልት፡ በዕለተ፡ ሰንበት፡
10 ወይእቲ፡ ዕለተ፡ ትንሣኤዩ ፤፤ ወካዕበ፡ ያስተርኢ፡ ውስተ፡ ሰማይ፡ ትዕም
ርተ፡ ከመ፡ ቀስተ፡ ደመና፡ ቀይሕ፡ ወይከውን፡ ነፋስ፡ ዐቢይ፡ እመንገለ ፡
ምዕራብ፡ ወረዓድ፡ ዕፁብ፡ ወድልቅልቅ፡ ወነጉድንድ፡ ወዝናም ፡ ይመጽእ ፡
እንበለ ፡ ጊዜሁ ፤፤ ወውእተ፡ አሚረ ፡ አርኑ ፡ አናቅጸ ፡ ሰማይ ፡ ወአስተርኢ ፡
ተአምራተ ፡ ዐበይተ ፡ ወአመዘብር ፡ አህጉራተ ፡ ወበሐውርተ ፡ ብዙኃ፡⁴⁴

15 ወአፈልሰ፡ አድባረ፡ ነውሐተ፡⁴⁵ እምነ፡ መካናቲሆሙ፡ ወአሰጥም ፡ አህጉ
ራተ ፡ ወአጠፍዕ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ሕዝበ ፡ ወአቀውም ፡ ማእከሌሆሙ ፡ ጽልእ ፡ ወኩ
ናተ ፡ እስከ ፡ ይቀትል ፡ አብ ፡ ወልዶ ፡

48 ወወልድኒ፡ አቡሁ ፤፤ ወኢይከውን፡ ውስተ፡ ልቦሙ፡ ምሕረተ፡ ወኢኃፍ
ረተ፡ ዲበ፡ ገጸሙ፡ ወይቀትል፡ እኅ፡ እኅዋሁ፡ ወእም፡ ትቀትል፡ ወለታ፡
20 ወወለትኒ፡ እማ ፤፤ ወመርዓት፡ ትቀትል፡ ሐማታ፡ ወሐማትኒ፡ ትቀትል፡
መርዓታ ፤፤

49 ወይገብር፡ ዝንቲ፡ ሕዝብ፡ ግብረ፡ እኩዩ፡ በከመ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ ጥዩቀ ፡
ወያረኩስ፡ ምድረ፡ በደኃሪ፡ መዋዕል ፡ ሶበ ፡ አልጸቀ ፡ ጊዜሆሙ ፤፤ ወያፈ
ጥኑ ፡ ክዲወ ፡ ደም ፡ ወትከውን ፡ ምድረ ፡⁴⁶ ምዝብርተ ፡

25 50 ወይከውን፡ እምነ፡ ውእቲ፡ ሕዝብ፡ ንጉሠ፡ እስመ፡ ውእቲ፡ ይጸል
አሙ፡ ለእለ፡ የአምኑ፡ ብዩ፡ እስከ፡ ይበዝኅ፡ ሐዘኖሙ፡ ፈድፋድ፡ በመዋዕ
ሊሁ፡ ወይረክቦሙ፡ እምኃቤሁ፡ ምንዳቤ፡ ወመከራ ፤፤ ወይዌልጥ፡ አልባሲ
ሆሙ፡ ወይኤዝዘሙ፡ ከመ፡ ይልበሱ፡ ልብሰ፡ ጸሊመ፡ ወኢይልበሱ፡
ልብሰ፡ ጸዓዳ፡ ወለአክሊላቲሆሙ፡ ከማሁ፡ ወይከውኑ፡ ከመ፡ ድንግል፡
30 እንተ፡ ትላሁ፡ ወተዓይል፡ ውስተ፡ ገዳም ፤፤

አሌ፡ ሎን፡ ለፅኑሳት፡ ወለእለ፡ ያጠብዋ ፡ ወዩሐፅና ፡ በውእቲ፡ መዋዕል ።

APPARATUS | 6 ⁴¹ For "ትሐ". 8 ⁴² For የ". | ⁴³ For "ተ". 14 ⁴⁴ For "ኃተ". 15 ⁴⁵ For "ዊ".
24 ⁴⁶ For "ር" ፡?

ders, and will increase in the law of religion things which they invented—a different matter of their own. These will strive to abolish my law.

46 In the latter days, there will rise a king from this nation. His name shall be like a priest.⁵⁴ During the one who will be appointed king, I will remove | the reign from him, and I will destroy all of them. Fear not from tribulations when | distress of the world meets you. Do not think that you have no salvation from this.

47 Know that (the reign of) this people will pass. The sign of the end of their time is that the sun will darken at midday on Sabbath⁵⁵ 10 day, which is the day of my resurrection. Also, there will appear in heaven a sign like a red rainbow. There will be a strong wind from the direction of the west, and terrible terror, tumult, thunder (will take place). Rain will come before its time. At that time, I will open the gates of heaven and show great miracles. I will have many cities and 15 countries plundered. I will remove tall mountains from their places, and drown cities. And I will destroy this people. I will set in their midst quarrel and spear⁵⁶ until a father kills his son,

48 and a son his father. There will be no mercy in their hearts or shame on their faces. A brother will kill his brothers; a mother will kill 20 her daughter, and a daughter her mother. A daughter-in-law will kill her mother-in-law, and a mother-in-law will kill her daughter-in-law.⁵⁷

49 This people will do evil deeds, as I have told you assuredly. And they will pollute the earth in the latter days when (the end of) their time arrives. They will hasten | to spill blood. The earth will be 25 plundered.

50 There will be a king from this people. He will be the one who will hate those who believe in me until their grief during this time will increase very much. They will sustain from him tribulation and trial. He will change their clothes; he will order them to put on black 30 clothes, and not to put on white clothes and the same will be with their crowns. They will be like a virgin who wails and wanders in the wilderness.

Woe to those who are pregnant, and those who are breastfeeding, and are nursing at that time.⁵⁸

35

⁵⁴ *Imām?*

⁵⁵ i.e. Sunday.

⁵⁶ That is, 'war'.

⁵⁷ The expressions are from Matt. 10:35–36.

⁵⁸ Matt. 24:19.

51 አእምሩ ፡ ከመ ፡ በደኃሪ ፡ መዋዕል ፡ በመንግሥተ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ይትመ
 ክዓበት ፡⁴⁷ ድካም ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ ፡ ወይሬስዩ ፡ ዓቃቢያነ ፡ ለከሊአ ፡ ቅኔክሙ ፡
 ወአሚሃ ፡ እፌኑ ፡ መንፈስ ፡ ኃይልዩ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያውፅአ ፡ ለንጉሥ ፡ ዘኃሪይክዎ ፡
 እምእለ[] አምኑ ፡ ብዩ ፡ እምብሔሪ ፡ ሕያዋን ፡ ወይጸአን ፡ ዲባ ፡ ፈረስ ፡ ዘኢ fol. 98r
 5 ተፅዕኖ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ እምቅድሜሁ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ልጓመ ፡ ፈረስ ፡ እምቅንዋት ፡
 ዘተቀነው ፡ ውስተ ፡ ሥጋዩ ፡ ዘለበስኩ ፡ እምነ ፡ አዳም ፡

52 ወይጸንዕ ፡ ወይበርህ ፡ ገጹ ፡ ባቲ ፡ ወይትጋደል ፡ በእንተ ፡ ኃሂሠ ፡ መሃይም
 ናን ፡ እለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ወይረክብዎ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡⁴⁸ ዓለም ፡ ወአጸንዖ ፡
 ወአኃይሎ ፡ ባቲ ፡ ወይገርሩ ፡ ኩሎሙ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ ስልጣኑ ፡ ወእሬስዮሙ ፡
 10 አግብርተ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወለክሙ ፡ ወለኩሎሙ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ትንግሡ ፡ ላዕሌ
 ሆሙ ፡ ሰብዓተ ፡ ምክዕቢተ ፡ በከመ ፡ ነግሡ ፡ ላዕሌክሙ ፡ ዘነበሩ ፡ ወይኳንኑ
 ክሙ ፡ ቀዳሚ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ በመዋዕሊሁ ፡ ለንጉሥክሙ ፡ ፍጹም ፡ ፍትሕ ፡
 ወርትዕት ፡ ዘስሙ ፡ እንላ ፡ አንበሳ ፡ ዘይመጽእ ፡ እመንገለ ፡ ምዕራብ ፡
 ወካዕበ ፡ እምድኅረ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ አርኑ ፡ አናቅጸ ፡ ሰሜን ፡ ወደቡብ ፡ ወአወፅእ ፡
 15 ሕዝበ ፡ ዘኅቡዓን ፡ ወዕሱራን ፡ በህዩ ፡ እለ ፡ ስሞሙ ፡ ጉግ ፡ ወማጉግ ፡ ከመ ፡
 ይሰልጡ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ወያረኩስዋ ፡ ለምድር ፡ ወይዘርውዎሙ ፡
 ለኩሎሙ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ወኢይተርፉ ፡ ዘመንገለ ፡ መንግሥትዩ ፡ ባሕቲቱ ፤
 ወመንግሥትዩ ፡ ዘእቤ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ ሐዋርያት ፡ ወክርስቲያን ፡ እለ ፡ ይተልው ፡
 አሰርክሙ ፡ ወምሰሌክሙ ፡ ይሰመዩ ፡ ውሉደ ፡ ርስተ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ወመ
 20 ንግሥትዩሰ ፡ ይእቲ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ቅድስት ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ኢይክሉ ፡
 አማስኖታ ፡ ግሙራ ፡ ወኢያገብኦ ፡⁴⁹ ውስተ ፡ እዴሆሙ ፡

53 ወካዕበ ፡ እምድኅረ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ አጠፍአሙ ፡ ወአሐጉሎሙ ፡ ለእሙንቱ ፡
 ሕዝብ ፡ ዘአውፃዕክዎሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ ገዳም ፡ ወእምውስተ ፡ ግበቢሆሙ ፡ ኅብ
 ዕት ፡ ወኅትምት ፡ ወእምድኅረ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ምግባረ ፡ እኩዩ ፡ በከመ ፡ ነገርኩ
 25 ክሙ ፡ ቀዲሙ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ጥፍዓቶሙ ፡ ማእከለ ፡ አድባር ፡ ወባሕር ፡ ወይ
 ትሐጉሎ ፡ ፍጡነ ፡ በህዩ ፡
 ወካዕበ ፡ እምድኅረ ፡ {ኮነ[]}⁵⁰ ዝንቱ ፡ ይመጽእ ፡ ወያስተርኢ ፡ ወልደ ፡
 ሐጉል ፡ *እምነ ፡ ገዳመ ፡⁵¹ ዳን ፡ ዘሀሎ ፡ ይሴፈውዎ ፡ እስመ ፡ ይብል ፡
 ገሃደ ፡ አነ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ከንቱ ፡ ስሙ ፡ ወከንቱ ፡ ልደቱ ፡ ወይትሐፀን ፡
 30 በሀገረ ፡ ሳይዳ ፡ ወይነግሥ ፡ በቅፍርናሆም ፡ ወይገብር ፡ ተአምራተ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያስ

APPARATUS | 2 ⁴⁷ For "ዐብ ፡ . 8 ⁴⁸ For "በ ፡ . 21 ⁴⁹ For "አ ፡ . 27 ⁵⁰ Supralinear. 28 ⁵¹ Probably for እምነገደ ፡ .

⁵⁹ See the traditional story of Caesar Constantine the Great, Getatchew Haile 2018, 147 and 245.

51 Know that in the latter days of the reign of this people, weariness will be doubled on them. They will set guards to prevent your worship. At that time, I will send the spirit of my power to bring out from the land of the living the king whom I choose from among those who believe in me. He will | ride a horse which no man has ridden before him. 5
fol. 98r The bridle of his horse will be (made) from the nails that were nailed in my body which I took from Adam.⁵⁹

52 He will be mighty, and his face will shine by it. He will strive in search of the faithful who believe (in me). All people of the world will meet him. I will strengthen him and empower him by it. All of them 10 will submit to his authority. I will make them his slaves. And so, you and all Christians will reign over them seven times (as much) as they have reigned over you and have ruled you before. There will be perfect righteousness and justice⁶⁰ during the reign of your king whose name is Lion Cub—he will come from the direction of the west. 15

p. 142 After this, I will, furthermore, open | the gates of the north and south,⁶¹ and release the hidden and imprisoned people there, whose names are Gog and Magog so that they may have authority over all people. They will pollute the earth and scatter all nations. There will remain nothing, but only those on the side of my kingdom, will be 20 spared. What I call my kingdom is you, my Apostles and the Christians who follow your footsteps, who will be called with you the children of the inheritance of God. And my kingdom is the holy Jerusalem. For they will never be able to destroy it. I will not deliver it into their hands. 25

53 After this, I will, furthermore, destroy and devastate these people, which I brought out from the desert and from their hidden and sealed caves, after they committed evil deeds, as I told you before. Their destruction will be between mountains and seas. They will perish there quickly. 30

Furthermore, after this has taken place, the Son of Perdition will come and appear from the tribe of Dan whom (the Jewish people) expect.⁶² For he will audaciously say, “I am the Christ”.⁶³ His name is in vain, and his birth is in vain. He will be nursed in the city of Bethsaida and be crowned in Capernaum. He will work miracles to mislead 35

⁶⁰ Cf. Ps. 89:14.

⁶¹ Arabic *šarq* and *baħr*.

⁶² Cf. John 17:12; 2 Thess. 2:3.

⁶³ Cf. Matt. 24:5.

ሕት ፡ ሰብአ ። ወእምነ ፡ ተአምራቱ ፡ ዘገብረ ፡ ያወርድ ፡ ዝናማተ ፡ ወያሠ fol. 98v
 ርፅ ፡ ፅፀዋተ ፡ ወያወፅፅ ፡ እምኔሆን ፡ ፍሬ ፡
 54 ብዙኃን ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ይተልውዎ ፡ ወይትራድእዎ ፡ በእንተ ፡ አሕጉሎ
 ቶሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ብየ ፡ እስከ ፡ ያስተጋብአሙ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ ስልጣኑ ፡
 5 ጉባኤ ፡ ብዙኃን ፡ እምነ ፡ ኅሩያንየ ። ወይከውን ፡ በቀዳሚ ፡⁵² ምጽአቱ ፡
 ረኃብ ፡ ዐቢይ ፡ ወዐባር ፡ ወሞት ፡ ይሰፍን ፡ ዲባ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ምድር ፡ ወይከውን ፡
 ፍርሀት ፡ ወረዓድ ፡ ወድልቅልቅ ፡ ወሰብእኒ ፡ ይፈልሱ ፡ እመካን ፡ ኃብ ፡
 መካን ፡ እምሀገር ፡ ለሀገር ። ወይከውን ፡ ምጽአቱ ፡ ለነጊሥ ፡ ኃብ ፡ ርእሰ ፡
 ፈለገ ፡ ዮሳፍጥ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ መዋዕለ ፡ መንግሥቱ ፡ ፫ዓመተ ፡ ወውእተ ፡
 10 ጊዜ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ብካይ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ እለ ፡ ነበሩ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይትፌሥሑ ፡ ወይትፈ
 ግዑ ፡ ምስሌሁ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ዓለም ።
 55 ወካዕብ ፡ ይመጽእ ፡ እምድሳረ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ {ይመጽእ ፡} ዓቃቤ ፡ መንግሥ
 ትየ ፡ ዘስሙ ፡ እንገለ ፡ አንበሳ ፡ ኃብ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ወይተክል ፡ መስቀል ፡⁵³ ዘተ
 ሰቀልኩ ፡ ቦቱ ፡ {ዲቤሁ ፡} ወየአቱ ፡ ማእከለ ፡ ምድር ። ወይሬሲ ፡ ጌራ ፡
 15 ላዕለ ፡ ርእሰ ፡ መስቀል ፡ ዘአውረድኩ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወአዓርግ ፡ መስቀለ ፡ ወጌራ ፡
 ውስተ ፡ ሰማይ ።
 ወሶብ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ምጽአትየ ፡ ይቀድመኒ ፡ መስቀልየ ፡ ስቡሕ ፡ ወእመጽእ ፡
 በደመና ፡ ሰማይ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ማእከለ ፡ ዕደውየ ፡⁵⁴

56 እስመ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ትእምርተ ፡ ምጽአትየ ፡ ከመ ፡ እኩንን ፡ ዓለመ ፡ ወትብ
 20 ርህ ፡ ኩላ ፡ ምድር ፡ እምኔሁ ፡ ወእምዝ ፡ እነሥእ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ውእተ ፡
 ጊዜ ፡ ወእመጽእ ፡ በሰብሐትየ ፡ ወእኳንኖሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ብየ ፡ ወአበው
 አሙ ፡ ለኩሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ብየ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥትየ ። ወእሬስ
 ዮሙ ፡ ውሉደ ፡ ርስትየ ፡ ወአኃድሮሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ዝንትየ ፡ እንተ ፡ ኢተኃልፍ ፡
 ዘኢርዕያ ፡ ዐይን ፡ ወኢሰምዓ ፡ ዕዝን ፡ ወኢተሐለየ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ልብ ፡ ሰብእ ።
 25 ወአስተዳለውኩ ፡⁵⁵ ለምእማናንየ ፡⁵⁶ እምቅድመ ፡ ይትፈጠር ፡ ዓለም ፡

57 ወይከውን ፡ ምጽአትየ ፡ በደመና ፡ ሰማይ ። ወውእተ ፡ ጊዜ ፡ እሥዕር ፡
 ኩሎ ፡ መንግሥታተ ፡ ምድር ፡ ወአጋዕዝተ ፡ ወሥልጣናተ ። ወእሬስያ ፡
 ለኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ልዕልተ ፡⁵⁷ ኃብ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ታሐቲተ ፡ ወእጠውሞ ፡ ለሰ
 ማይ ፡ ከመ ፡ ክርታስ ፡ ወእሬስያ ፡ ለምድር ፡ ዘእ[ን]በለ ፡ መሠረት ። ወአየ fol. 99r
 30 ብስ ፡ ባሕረ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዘኢነበረ ፡ ማይ ፡ ውስቴቱ ። ወአሣትኒ ፡ ይጠፍአ ፡ ወአየ

APPARATUS | 5 ⁵² For "ሚ ፡. 13 ⁵³ For "ለ ፡. 18 ⁵⁴ For "ድ". 25 ⁵⁵ For ዘአ". | ⁵⁶ For "እመ".
 28 ⁵⁷ For "ት ፡.

⁶⁴ Cf. Matt. 24:24.
⁶⁵ Lit. 'river'.

fol. 98v people.⁶⁴ Among his miracles | which he will work is that he will bring down rains and grow trees and from them he will bring forth fruit.

54 Many Jews will follow him and help him in the destruction of those who believe in me, until he brings together under his authority a huge crowd of my chosen ones. There will be a great famine and drought at the beginning of his coming. Death will prevail over the whole earth. There will be fear, terror, and turmoil. People will migrate from place to place, from city to city. He will come in order to be p. 143 crowned | at the top of the valley⁶⁵ of Jehoshaphat. The time of his reign will be three (short) years. At that time, there will be weeping 10 upon those who were rejoicing and surfeiting with him in (this) world.

55 After this, furthermore, the keeper of my kingdom, whose name is the Lion Cub, will come to Jerusalem. He will set the Cross on which I was crucified, coming to the centre of the earth. He will put on the top of the Cross a crown which I will bring down for it. I will 15 (then) lift up the Cross and the crown into heaven.

When my coming takes place, my glorious cross will precede me. I will come in the clouds of heaven.⁶⁶ (The Cross) will be in the middle of my hands.

56 For it is the sign of my coming to judge the world. The whole 20 earth will be brightened by it. Then, at that time, I will take over the rulership. I will come in my glory and I will judge those who denied me. And I will bring into my Kingdom all who believe in me, and make them the children of my inheritance. I will make them dwell in my Paradise which will not pass, ‘which eye has not seen, nor ear 25 head, nor entered into the heat of man that I have prepared for my faithful before the world was created’.⁶⁷

57 My coming will be in the clouds of heaven.⁶⁸ At that time, I will p. 144 abolish all earthly kingdoms, lords, and authorities.⁶⁹ I will make | the high Jerusalem to the Jerusalem beneath. I will roll up the sky like a 30 fol. 99r scroll.⁷⁰ I will make the earth | baseless. I will cause the sea to dry up, as if there had not been water in it. And the fish will vanish. I will

⁶⁶ Matt. 24:30; 26:64; Mark 13:26; 14:62; Luke 21:27.

⁶⁷ Cf. 1 Cor. 2:9, and *Mystagogia* in Hammerschmidt 1960, 70. Quoted in the anaphoras of the Three Hundred Eighteen, of Basil, of John Chrysostom, and of James of Sarug, as well as in the *Supplication for the dead*, see *Mashafa qaddase* 1957/1958, 134, 177, 206, 227, and 286, respectively.

⁶⁸ Matt. 26:64.

⁶⁹ Cf. 1 Cor. 15:24.

⁷⁰ Cf. Isa. 34:4.

ብስ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ አፍላገ ፡ ወአንቅዕተ ፤ ወአፈልሶሙ ፡ ለአድባር ፡ ወእቀጠቅ ጦሙ ፡ ወዕሬስዮሙ ፡ ዕሩያነ ፤ ወይፀልም ፡ ፀሐይ ፡ ወኩሎ ፡ ፀዳሉ ፡ ወርጎኒ ፡ ኢይሁብ ፡ ብርሃኖ ፡ ወከዋክብትኒ ፡ ይወድቁ ፡ ወአነብር ፡ መንበረ ፡ ስብሐት ፡ ኃበ ፡ መካን ፡ ዘሰቀሉኒ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ውስቴቱ ፡ ሥጋየ ፤

5 58 ወይጸርጎ ፡ ገብርኤል ፡ መልአክ ፡ ምዕመንየ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ምሥጢራትየ ፡ በቀርን ፤ ወይነፍጎ ፡ ሚካኤል ፡ ዐቢይ ፡ ወኃያል ፡ በውስተ ፡ ሰረገላ ፡ ቀርነ ፡ ወታወዕዕ ፡ ምድር ፡ ዘዲቤሃ ፡ ወዘእምታሕቴሃ ፤ ወሰማያዊያን ፡ ወኩሎሙ ፡ መላእክትየ ፡ የሐውሩ ፡ ቅድሚየ ፡ እልፍ ፡ ወአእላፍ ፡ ወትዕልፊት ፡ አዕላፋት ፡ ረበዋት ፤ ሱራፌል ፡ ወኪሩቤል ፡

10 59 ወይኔጽሩ ፡ ኃቤየ ፡ ኩሎ ፡⁵⁸ እንለ ፡ እመሕያው ፡ ምዕመናን ፡ ወከሀዲያን ፤ አሜሃ ፡ የአምሩኒ ፡ ዘሰቀሉኒ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ዕፀ ፡ መስቀል ፡ ከመ ፡ አነ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ አምላክ ፡ አብርሃም ፡ ይሥሐቅ ፡ ወያዕቆም ፡ ወውእተ ፡ ጊዜ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ብዕአት ፡ ለእለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ብየ ፤

60 ወአነ ፡ አነብሮሙ ፡ ገሃደ ፡ ለአርዳእየ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ፲ወ፪መናብርት ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኩንኑ ፡ ፲ወ፪ነገደ ፡ እስራኤል ፡ ወእኳንን ፡ በፍትሕ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ ለእለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ብየ ፤ ወአበውዖሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥትየ ፡ በሥምረትየ ፤ ወአወርሶሙ ፡ ገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡ ወመንግሥተ ፡ ዘኢያሐልቅ ፡⁵⁹ ወዘኢያኃልፍ ፡⁶⁰ ወካዕበ ፡ አኃድሮሙ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ሊቃውንት ፡ ክቡራን ፡ አብራሃም ፡ ይሥሐቅ ፡ ወያዕቆብ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ብርሃን ፡ ዘኢይረክቦ ፡ ጽልመት ፤ ወኢጸዳሉ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ዘኢይሁጋር ፡ ወኢይትማጠን ፡⁶¹ ብርሃኑ ፤ ወእሁቦሙ ፡ [ናጎየ ፡ ወዕረፍተ ፡

61 ወ]ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ወአወርሶሙ ፡ እሳተ ፡ ዘኢይጠፍዕ ፡ ኃበ ፡ አልባቲ ፡ ጎልቀተ ፡ ወኢተፍጻሚተ ፡ ወዕዪ ፡ ዘኢይመውት ፡ ወአኃድሮሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ጽልመት ፡ እንተ ፡ አልባቲ ብርሃነ ፤

62 አሌ[፡] ሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ብየ ፡ ወእምድጎረ ፡ ለብሱ ፡ *መንፈስ ፡
25 ቅዱስ ፤⁶²

አሌ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ለይሁዳ ፡ ዘመጠው ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይስቅሉኒ ፤
አሌ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ [ክህዱ ፡] ብየ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ወአነሂ ፡ እክህደሙ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ | ፍዳ ፡ ወእሬስዮሙ ፡ ሕሱራነ ፡ ወጎፋራነ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ መላእክት ፡ ወሰ
ብእ ፡ ወዕወድዮሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ኩነኔ ፡ እንተ ፡ አልባቲ ፡ ናጎየ ፡ ወኢዕረፍተ ፤

fol. 99v

APPARATUS | 10 ⁵⁸ For "ሉ" ፡ or "ሎሙ" ፡. 17 ⁵⁹ For "የ" ፡ | ⁶⁰ For "የ" ፡. 20 ⁶¹ For "ሚ" ፡. 25 ⁶² For "ስ" ፡, "ስ" ፡.

71 Cf. Isa. 50:2.
72 Cf. Isa. 45:2.
73 Cf. Matt. 24:29.

cause all rivers and fountains to dry up.⁷¹ I will remove the mountains. I wish to crush them and level them.⁷² The sun and all its brightness will darken. The moon, too, will not give its light. Stars will fall.⁷³ I will set the throne of my glory at the place where Jews crucified me in the flesh. 5

58 The angel Gabriel, my trusted one, will shout with horn concerning my mysteries. And the great and mighty Michael will blow the horn from a chariot. The earth will bring forth what is on it and under it. The heavenly ones and all the angels will go before me—thousands and thousands (of) myriad, the *rābbāwat*,⁷⁴ seraphim, and cherubim.⁷⁵ 10

59 All mankind will look toward me, the faithful as well as the deniers. At that time, those who crucified me in my body on a wood cross will know me, that I am the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. At that time, vow⁷⁶ prayer will be fulfilled for those who believe in me.

p. 145 **60** | And I will solemnly set my disciples on twelve thrones so that 15 they may judge the twelve tribes of Israel. And I will judge in justice my people who believe in me. And I will bring them into my kingdom by my good will and let them inherit the Garden of Joy and the Kingdom that will have no end and that will not pass.⁷⁷ Furthermore, I will make them reside with the honourable chiefs—Abraham, Isaac, and 20 Jacob—in a light which darkness does not find and whose brightness will not be abolished and whose light will have no limit.

61 As for those who denied my name, I will let them, and make them inherit unquenchable fire, where there is no end or completion, and (where) the worm does not die.⁷⁸ I will make them reside in a 25 darkness which has no light.

62 Woe to those who deny me after they have been clothed with the Holy Spirit.⁷⁹

Woe to Judas who delivered my body that they may crucify me.

fol. 99v Woe to them who [deny] me before people, I, too, will deny them 30 on the day of | restitution; I will make them be despised and embarrassed before angels and people. And I will throw them into damnation p. 146 from which there is no repose or rest. And I will burn them in | an un-

⁷⁴ The *arbab* are a class of angels like the seraphim and the cherubim.

⁷⁵ Cf 1 Pet. 3:22; and *Anaphora of James of Serug*, Marcos Daoud and Marsie Hazen 1954, 222 (§§ 15–16).

⁷⁶ *baḏ'at* is a promise of a gift if the prayer is answered, cf. Ps. 114/115:14.

⁷⁷ Cf. Luke 1:33.

⁷⁸ Cf. Mark 9:45–48.

⁷⁹ i.e. ‘after they have been baptized’.

ወአው-ዕየ-ሙ ፡ በእሳት ፡ ዘኢይጠፍዕ ፡ ወአሰልጥ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ ዕዲ ፡
ዘኢይነውም ፡ ወኢያሐልቅ ፡⁶³ ኃበ ፡ ብካይ ፡ ወሐቂየ ፡⁶⁴ ስነን ።።
አሌ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ኪያየ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ፡ እብሎሙ ፡ ኢያአምረ
ክሙ ።።⁶⁵

5 አሌ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ርትዕተ ፡ ክሂሎትየ ፡ ወአነ ፡ እሬሲ ፡ ነፍ
ሶሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ እሳተ ፡ ገሃነም ፡ ምንባሮሙ ።።

63 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ [ብየ ፡] እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አኃድሮሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡
ገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡ ምስለ ፡ አብርሃም ፡ ይሥሐቅ ፡ ወያዕቆብ ።።

10 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የአምኑ ፡ ብየ ፡ እስመ ፡ ገጸሙ ፡ ይበርህ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ፡ ምስብ
ጊተ ፡ እምፀሐይ ።።

64 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያረምሙ ፡ እስከ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ ሞቶሙ ፡ በምንዳቤ ፡ በእንተ ፡
ስምየ ።።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይጼእልዎሙ ፡ ወይሳለቁ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ አበዊሆሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ሃይ
ማኖቶሙ ፡ ዘአምኑ ፡ ብየ ።።

15 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይጸፍዑ ፡⁶⁶ ገጸሙ ፡ ወመላትሒሆሙ ፡ በእንተአየ ፡ ወበእንተ ፡
ስምየ ።።

65 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትኤገልዎሙ ፡ ንዋዮሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ አሚኖቶሙ ፡ ብየ ፡
ወበመለኮትየ ።።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይዋህክዎሙ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ርጉማን ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ።።

20 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይዌወው ፡ በእንተ ፡ ሃይማኖቶሙ ፡ ብየ ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትናገሩ ፡ ሐሰተ ፡ ወበላዕሌሆሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያነድዩ ፡ ነፍሶሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ።።

66 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰየጡ ፡ በወርቅ ፡ ወበብሩር ፡ ኃበ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ወኃበ ፡ አሕ
ዛብ ፡ ወይጸንኡ ፡ በሃይማኖቶሙ ፡ ብየ ።።

25 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያበልዑ ፡ ለአኃዊሆሙ ፡ ነዳያን ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡
ቅሩባነ ፡ ኃቤየ ።።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የኃድርዎሙ ፡ ለአናግድ ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያለብስዎሙ ፡ ለዕሩቃን ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይገብሩ ፡ ሠናየ ፡ ለክርስቲያን ።።

30 67 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰደዱ ፡ እመካን ፡ ኃበ ፡ መካን ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የኃድሩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ገዳማት ፡ ከመ ፡ ይትቀነዩ ፡ ሊተ ።።
ብፁዓን ፡ ገዳማዊያን ፡ እለ ፡ ይነብሩ ፡ መልዕልተ ፡ አድባር ፡ ነውሐት ፡ በእ
ንተ ፡ ስምየ ።።

APPARATUS | 2 ⁶³ For "የ". | ⁶⁴ Always so, for "ቅ". 4 ⁶⁵ For "የ". 15 ⁶⁶ For "ፈ".

quenchable fire. I will authorize on their bodies the worm which neither sleeps nor has an end—where there is cry and gnashing of teeth.⁸⁰

Woe to them who deny me; on the day of restitution I will say to them, “I do not know you”.⁸¹ 5

Woe to those who deny my just ability, I will make the abode of their souls in the fire of hell.

63 Blessed are those who believe [in me,] for I will let them dwell in Garden of Joy with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

Blessed are those who believe in me, for on the day of retribution 10 their faces will shine seven times (more) than the sun.

64 Blessed are those who keep silent until the day of their death p. 147 while in tribulation | for my name’s sake.

Blessed are those whom people abuse and mock their fathers because of their faith, which they believed in me. 15

Blessed are those whom people slap their faces and cheeks because of me and because of my name.

65 Blessed are those whose money (the enemies) despoil because of their belief in me and in my divinity.

Blessed are those whom cursed people provoke for my name’s sake. 20

Blessed are those who are taken captives for the sake of their faith in me.

Blessed are those against whom people tell lies for my name’s sake.

Blessed are those who make themselves poor for my name’s sake.

66 Blessed are those who are sold for gold and silver (pieces) to 25 kings and nations and (still) remain steadfast in their faith in me.

Blessed are those who feed their poor brothers, for they will be near me.

Blessed are those who offer lodging to wayfarers.

Blessed are those who clothe the naked. 30

Blessed are those who do good things to Christians.

67 Blessed are those who flee from place to place for my name’s sake.

Blessed are those who dwell in deserts to adore me.

Blessed are the desert-dwellers who live on top of high mountains 35 for my name’s sake.

⁸⁰ Isa. 66:24; Matt. 8:12; 13:42; 22:13; 24:51; 25:30; Luke 13:28.

⁸¹ Matt. 7:23.

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የዐቅብዎሙ ፡ ለድውያን ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ወያነሥ|እዎሙ ፡ በእ fol. 100r
ንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡፤

68 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያከብርዎሙ ፡ በእንቲአየ ፡ ወበእንተ ፡ አሚኖቶሙ ፡ ብየ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሔውጽዎሙ ፡ ለካህናት ፡ ወያከብርዎሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡
5 እስመ ፡ ለእሙንቱ ፡ ይ[ከ]ውን ፡ ማኅደሮሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡
ወይነበሩ ፡ ገሃደ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥት ፡ ዘኢያኃልፍ ፡፤⁶⁷

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትለአከ፡ ውስተ ፡ ምሥዋዕየ ፡ በፍርሃት ፡ ወበረዓድ ፡ በንጽ
ሕና ፡ ወበኒሩት ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይጸንሑ ፡ ዕሜቶሙ ፡ ወአወፍኖሙ ፡ ገሃደ ፡ ትፍሥ
ሕተ ፡ አመ ፡ ዳግም ፡ ምጽአትየ ፡፤

10 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የሐትው ፡ ማኅቶተ ፡ በውስተ ፡ አብያተ ፡ ክርስቲያንየ ፡፤

69 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትቤዘውዎሙ ፡ ለአኃዊሆሙ ፡ {ለአኃዊሆሙ ፡} ወያር
ኅቡ ፡ ልቦሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ ጸሕቆሙ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሔውጽዎሙ ፡ ለፍቁራንየ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡
ቅሩባነ ፡ ኃቤየ ፡ ወይትጌለቁ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ኅሩያንየ ፡፤

15 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትኤገሱ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ምንዳቤ ፡ ወኅርትምና ፡ ወዕርቃን ፡ በእንተ ፡
ስምየ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የኃድጉ ፡ አቡሆሙ ፡ ወእሞሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡፤ ብፁዓን ፡
እለ ፡ የኃድጉ ፡ አኃዊሆሙ ፡ ወውሉዶሙ ፡ ወአዝማዲሆሙ ፡ በእንቲአየ ፡፤

70 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰብኩ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ አጽናፈ ፡
20 ምድር ፡፤ ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሜህሩ ፡ ስብከተ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይትሜህሩ ፡
ወያግህዱ ፡ ትምህርተ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ምድር ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይጽሕፉ ፡ ተአምራተ ፡ ወመንክራተ ፡ ስብከተ ፡ ቃለ ፡ መጻሕፍ
ትየ ፡ ወእለሂ ፡ ይኤዝዙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይጽሐፉ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ኢያጸርዑ ፡ ወትረ ፡ ዘክሮ ፡ ስምየ ፡ መዓልተ ፡ ወሌሊተ ፡
25 እስመ ፡ እሂሉ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡፤

71 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ የዐወይው ፡ ወይስእሉ ፡ ኃባ ፡ ማርያም ፡ እምየ ፡ በሥጋ ፡
ለእለ ፡ ይዜክርዋ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ጸሎቶሙ ፡ ወአስተብቀኦቶሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግ
ሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡ ይከውን ፡ መንበሮሙ ፡ ወማኅደሮሙ ፡፤

72 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያርኅቡ ፡ ወያጸምዑ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከ
30 ውኑ ፡ ቅሩባነ ፡ ኃቤየ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አረውኖሙ ፡ ወአጸግቦሙ ፡ እምውስተ ፡
ገነትየ ፡ ወአወርሶሙ ፡ ፍሥሐ ፡ ዘለዓለም ፡ እምውስተ ፡ መዛግብትየ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሔውጽዎሙ ፡ ወይሁብዎሙ ፡ ለምስኪናን ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ መሀርያን ፡ ለነዳያን ፡ እስመ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ይምህርዎሙ ፡፤

APPARATUS | 6⁶⁷ For ”የ”.

⁸² Possibly, ‘relief them of their oppressive (situation)’.

fol. 100r Blessed are those who protect the Christians and | take them (home)
for my name's sake.

68 Blessed are those who honour (the poor Christians) for my sake
and for the sake of their belief in me.

Blessed are those who visit the priests and honour them for my s
name's sake, for their abode will be in the Garden of Joy, and they will
live solemnly in the Kingdom that will not pass.

p. 148 Blessed are those who attend to my sacrifice in fear, trembling, in
purity and goodness, awaiting their reward. I will grant | them joy sol-
emnly at my second coming. 10

Blessed are those who light candles on in my churches.

69 Blessed are those who redeem their brothers [and their sisters]
and make their hearts hungry for their desire.⁸²

Blessed are those who visit my beloved ones, for they will be near
me and be counted with my chosen ones. 15

Blessed are those who endure tribulation, humiliation, and naked-
ness for my name's sake. Blessed are those who forsake their fathers
and their mothers for my name's sake.

Blessed are those who forsake their brothers, children, and their
kinsmen for my sake.⁸³ 20

70 Blessed are those who preach my name in all ends of the earth.

Blessed are those who teach the preaching of faith to those who
learn and publish the teaching in the whole earth.

Blessed are those who write miracles and wonders of the preaching
of the word of my books and those who commission others to write. 25

Blessed are those who do not cease mentioning my name at all
times, day and night, for I will live with them.

71 Blessed are those who cry out and pray to Mary, my mother in
flesh, (and) those who remember her in their prayers and their interces-
sions. Their living and dwelling will be in the Kingdom of Heaven. 30

p. 149 **72** Blessed are those who expose their bodies to hunger and thirst
(for my sake) for they will be near me, because I will give them water
and satiate them | from my garden, and I will make them inherit eternal
joy from my treasures.⁸⁴

Blessed are those who visit the poor and give them (alms). 35

Blessed are those who are merciful to the poor, for they will receive
mercy.⁸⁵

⁸³ Cf. Matt. 19:29.

⁸⁴ Cf. Matt. 5:6.

⁸⁵ Matt. 5:7.

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሚንኑ ፡ ፍግዓ ፡ ዓለም ፡ እስመ ፡ እገሙንቱ ፡ ይወርሱ ፡ fol. 100v
ምድረ ፡ ሐዳሰ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ ንጹሐነ ፡ ልብ ፡ እስመ ፡ ይሬእይዎ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡፤
73 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይቀትልዎሙ ፡ ለዓላውያን ፡ ወለከሀዲያን ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙ-
5 ንቱ ፡ ይቀርቡ ፡ ኃቤየ ፡ ወሎሙኒ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትቀተሉ ፡ በእንቲአየ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ መሥዋ
ዕተ ፡ ንጹሐ ፡፤ ወይትኃለቁ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ሠራዊትየ ፡ ወፍቁራንየ ፡ ወመላእክ
ትየ ፡፤ ወእስምዕ ፡ አስተብቀዎተክሙ ፡⁶⁸ ወለእለሂ ፡ ይስእሉ ፡ ወይጼልዩ ፡
ኃቤሆሙ ፡ እኔጽር ፡ ወዕስምዕ ፡ አውያቶሙ ፡ ዘይጼልዩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መካን ፡ ወዘ
10 ይጼውዕ ፡ አስማቲሆሙ ፡ እሬሲ ፡ ፈውሰ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ሥጋቲሆሙ ፡ ሰባ ፡
ሰዓሉ ፡ ኃቤሆሙ ፡ በሃይማኖት ፡ ወእከሥት ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ነፍሳቲሆሙ ፡ ይትረክይ
ዎሙ ፡ አምሳለ ፡ መላእክት ፡ ወዕሬሲ ፡ ኃይልየ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይመውቱ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ ሕዩ
ዋነ ፡ በውስተ ፡ መንግሥትየ ፡፤
15 74 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይነሥኡ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ወደምየ ፡ በአሚን ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ኢይእጽ
ሕፍ ፡⁶⁹ ወኢይኃልቀኑ ፡ ሳዕሌሆሙ ፡ ኃጢአተ ፡ አመ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ ይነሥኡ ፡ ወዕ
ሬሲ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ልቦሙ ፡ ሥርየተ ፡ ወምሕረተ ፡፤
75 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትጋደሉ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምየ ፡፤ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ዕወዲ ፡
ውስተ ፡ ልቦሙ ፡ *መንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ወጥበብ ፡⁷⁰ ወንጽሕፍ ፡ ወእረስዮሙ ፡
20 ሊቃውንተ ፡ በውስተ ፡ መንግሥትየ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰድድዎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይትናገሩ ፡ ዕልወታተ ፡ [ከ]ንቶ ፡፤
ወእለ ፡ ይርሕቁ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ወይሰጠው ፡ ለትእዛዝየ ፡ ለእሙንቱ ፡ ይከ
ውን ፡ ማኅደሮሙ ፡ ወመንበሮሙ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ሐዋርያትየ ፡ በመንግሥተ ፡ ሰማ
ያት ፡፤
25 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያሐንጹ ፡⁷¹ ዐብያተ ፡ ክርስቲያናት ፡ በስመ ፡ ነቢያትየ ፡ ወሐዋ
ርያትየ ፡፤ እስመ ፡ አሐንጽ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ማኅደረ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ንነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡
ወዕሬስዮሙ ፡ ኅሩያንየ ፡ ወፍቁራንየ ፡፤ ወአበውዎሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥ
ትየ ፡፤
76 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትቃወምዎሙ ፡ ወይትቃተልዎሙ ፡ ለከሀዲያን ፡ ወአ
30 ነሂ ፡ እቀትሎ ፡ ለሰይጣን ፡ በእንቲአሆሙ ፡ ወዕሥዕር ፡ ሥልጣኖ ፡ እምላዕሌ
ሆሙ ፡ ወዕሬሲ ፡ መላእክትየ ፡ ይኩኑ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትፈገገዎሙ ፡ ለአኃዊሆሙ ፡ ምዕመናን ፡ እስመ ፡ እፈድ
ዮሙ ፡ ሠናየ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ፡፤
77 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያበው|ዑ ፡ አሥራተ ፡ እምንዋዮሙ ፡ ኃባ ፡ ቤትየ ፡፤ fol. 101r
35 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያከብርዎሙ ፡ ወያሌዕልዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትየ ፡፤

APPARATUS | 8 ⁶⁸ For "ቶሙ" . 16 ⁶⁹ For "ኢይጽ" . 19 ⁷⁰ For "ሰ" ፣ "ሰ" ፣ "በ" ፣ 25 ⁷¹ For "የ" .

fol. 100v Blessed are those who despise the pleasure of the world for | they will inherit a new earth.

Blessed are those of pure heart, for they will see God.⁸⁶

73 Blessed are those who combat the heretics and the deniers, for they will come near me, and the Kingdom of Heaven is for them. 5

Blessed are those who are killed for my sake, for they will be pure sacrifice, and will be counted with my army, my beloved ones, and my angels; and I will hear (their) intercession. And those who ask and pray to them, I will look and hear their wailing which they do in (their religious) centres. And whoever calls their names (in prayer) I will cause 10 healing to their bodies, if they pray to them in faith; and I will reveal to them their souls so they may appear to them like angels. And I will show my power on their bodies.

Blessed are those who die for my name's sake, for they will live in my kingdom. 15

74 Blessed are those who take my body and my blood in faith, for I will not record or count against them any sin (they committed) on the day they receive, and I will set in their hearts remission (of sin) and mercy.

75 Blessed are those who strive for my name's sake, for I will put 20
p. 150 in the hearts | the Holy Spirit, wisdom, and purity. And I will make them chiefs in my kingdom.

Blessed are those who banish those who speak vain heresies, and those who stay far from them, and respond to my commandment, their abode and living will be with my Apostles in the Kingdom of Heaven. 25

Blessed are those who build churches in the name of my prophets and my Apostles, for I will build for them an abode in the Garden of Joy, and I will make them my chosen and my beloved ones. And I will let them into my kingdom.

76 Blessed are those who oppose and fight the deniers, for I, too, 30 will fight Satan for their sake, and abolish his authority from over them, and I will make my angels be with them.

Blessed are those who (do not) demand repayment from their faithful brothers, for I will repay them good things on the day of retribution.

fol. 101r **77** Blessed are those who bring | to my house tithes of their money. 35
Blessed are those who honour and exalt my priests.

⁸⁶ Matt. 5:8.

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሬሰዩ ፡ ውሉዶሙ ፡ ካህናት ፡ ሊተ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እኔ
 ልቀኝ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወእክዑ ፡ ላዕሌሁ ፡ ማየ ፡ ሕይወት ፡ ዘውስተ ፡ ገነት ፡ ወእትወ
 ከፍ ፡ አስተብቀኝ ፡ ወልዱ ፡ በእንተ ፡ አቡሁ ፡ ወእሰሪ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ጌጋዮ ፡
 ወእመትር ፡ መሠረተ ፡ ኃጣውጊሁ ።

5 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ኢያጸርዑ ፡ ጸልዮ ፡ በአሚን ፡ በውስተ ፡ ዐብያተ ፡ ክርስቲያ
 ናት ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እሂሉ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ። ወጸሎተ ፡ ዘይትናገር ፡ አሐተ ፡
 ቃለ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ እኔልቀኝ ፡ ለዘይጼሊ ፡ ፲፻፳ሎተ ፡ እምዘ ፡
 ይጼሊ ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ ጸሎተ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤቱ ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ኢይነውሙ ፡ በሌሊት ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አነጽሕ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ አበሳ
 10 ሆሙ ፡ ዘቀዳሚት ።

ብፁዕ ፡ ዘይሁብ ፡ ምጽዋተ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እዘግብ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መዛግ
 ብተ ፡ ምጽዋት ። ወለዘሂ ፡ ይሁብ ፡ ምጽዋተ ፡ ፩እኔልቀኝ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ፲፻ምጽ
 ዋተ ።

78 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያለብስዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ እስመ ፡ አለብሰሙ ፡ ብርሃነ ፡
 15 አመ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይዜከርዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ተዝካሮሙ ፡ እምድጎረ ፡
 ሞቱ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እፈድዮሙ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ፡ እምገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕትዮ ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያበውዕዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ ውስተ ፡ አብያተሆሙ ፡ ወይገ
 ብሩ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ሠናያተ ፡ ለለ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ሻዕለተ ፡ እምዓመት ፡ እስከ ፡
 20 ዓመት ፡ አሐደ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እሠሪ ፡ ወአነጽሕ ፡ ዘገ
 ብረ ፡ ኃጢአተ ፡ መጠነ ፡ ሻዕለት ። ወእትወከፍ ፡ አስተብቀኝ ፡ ካህናት ፡ በእ
 ንቲአሁ ። ወአነ ፡ ወኃብክዎሙ ፡ ሥልጣነ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ በሰማይ ፡ ወበም
 ድር ፡ ዘኃደጉ ፡ አበሳ ፡ ለሰብእ ፡ አነ ፡ አኃድግ ፡ ሎሙ ። ለእለ ፡ ኢኃደጉ ፡
 ሎሙ ፡ አነሂ ፡ ኢያኃድግ፡⁷² ሎሙ ፡ ወእሙንቱ ፡ ሱቱፋን ፡ ለመንግሥተ ፡
 25 ሰማያት ፡ ወይከውኑ ፡ ውሉደ ፡ ርስትዮ ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያኩብርዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እሬሲ ፡ ልዑለ ፡ አስ
 ማቲሆሙ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ መላእክትዮ ፡ ሰማያዊያን ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሬሰይዎሙ ፡ ዕሩፋነ ፡ ለነጋድያን ፡ ውስተ ፡ አብያተሆሙ ።

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሁብዎሙ ፡ ለካህናት ፡ እምንዋዮሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ ኢያሐ
 30 ጽጽ ፡⁷³ ሎሙ ፡ ወይትዌሰክ ፡ ዲቤሆሙ ፡ ጸጋዮ ።

79 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሁቡ ፡ ብፅአቶሙ ፡ ወይሚህሩ ፡ ሃይማኖተ ፡ ለአኃዊ
 ሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ አበርህ ፡ ገጸሙ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣኤ ። ፈድፋደ ፡ እምነ ፡
 ፀሐይ ፡ ፯ምክዕቢተ ።

APPARATUS | 24 ⁷² For "የ". 30 ⁷³ For "የ".

Blessed are those who make their children priests for me, for I will count (it as a good deed) for (the father)⁸⁷ and I will pour over him water of life which is in the Garden.⁸⁸ I will receive the intercession of his son about his father, and I will remit all his transactions, and I will cut off the foundation of his sins.⁸⁹ 5

p. 151 Blessed are those who do not cease praying with faith in churches, for I will live with them | . I will count a single word (of prayer) which one utters in church as though one has prayed one thousand prayers (times) more than what much he prays in his house.

Blessed are those who do not sleep at night, for I will cleanse for 10 them their previous transgressions.

Blessed is he who gives alms, for I will record (them) for him in the records of alms. I will count one alms which one gives as if he gave one thousand alms.

78 Blessed are those who clothe my priests, for I will clothe them 15 with light on the day of retribution.

Blessed are those who remember my priests on the day of their commemoration after they died, for on the day of retribution I will repay them from my Garden of Joy.

Blessed are those who admit my priests in their houses and do for 20 them all good things once every forty days all year round for I will remit and cleanse the sins which one committed within full forty days; and I will receive the intercession of priests for him. I have given my priests the authority in heaven and on earth (such that) I will forgive the sins which they forgive for men; I will not forgive those for whom 25 they do not forgive.⁹⁰ They are partakers in the Kingdom of Heaven. They will be children of my inheritance.

Blessed are those who honour my priests, for I will make their names exalted before my heavenly angels.

p. 152 | Blessed are those who let wayfarers rest in their houses. 30

Blessed are those who give priests from their money, for it will not decrease against them, rather my grace will be added to them.

⁸⁷ Something is missing here.

⁸⁸ Gen. 2:10; Rev. 22:1.

⁸⁹ Possibly a reference to the story in the *Funeral Ritual* where a son's prayer helped the father's soul to come out of hell, Getatchew Haile 2004.

⁹⁰ Cf. John 20:22–23.

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሬስይዎሙ ፡ ግዑዛነ ፡ | ለነፍሰ ፡ ምዕመናን ፡ እምነ ፡ ግብር fol. 101v
ናት ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምዩ ፤ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አግዕዝ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ እሳት ፡
ዘይነድድ ፤ ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ኢያሐድግዎሙ ፡⁷⁴ ይምልክዎሙ ፡ አረሚ ፡ ለአ
ኃዊሆሙ ፡ ምዕመናን ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ኢያኃድግ ፡⁷⁵ ከመ ፡ ኢይንግሥ ፡⁷⁶ ላዕሌ
5 ሆሙ ፡ እሳተ ፡ ገሃነም ፤

80 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይፌጽሙ ፡ መዋዕሊሆሙ ፡ በተሐርሞ ፡ ወበዕርቃን ፡ በእ
ንተ ፡ ስምዩ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አለብሶሙ ፡ ብርሃነ ፡ ዐቢዩ ፡ ዘኢይሰፈር ፡ ወዘኢይ
ትሜጠን ፤

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትቀሰፉ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስምዩ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እሠምር ፡ በሙ ፤
10 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያነሥእዎሙ ፡ ለድውያን ፡ ወለምስኪናን ፡ ወያበውዕዎሙ ፡
ውስተ ፡ አብያሂሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ ጸጋዩ ፡ ትሄሉ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤቶሙ ፤
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያርገው ፡ መዛግብቲሆሙ ፡ ለምስኪናን ፡ እስመ ፡ መዝገበ ፡
ጸጋዩ ፡ ወምሕረትዩ ፡ ትትረኃው ፡ ሎሙ ፤

81 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያፈጥኑ ፡ በጺሐ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ እስመ ፡ መላእክ
15 ትዩ ፡ ያበጽሕዎሙ ፡ ኃበ ፡ መናብርቲሆም ፡ ክብርት ፡ ወልዕልት ፤ ወይትቀ
በልዎሙ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣኤ ፤

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያበውዑ ፡ መባዓ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ መቅደስዩ ፡ እምኃፈ ፡
ገጸሙ ፡ ወእምግብረ ፡⁷⁷ ዕደዊሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ውከፈ ፡ በኃ
ቤዩ ፡ በከመ ፡ ቍርባኑ ፡ ለመልክ ፡ ጼዴቅ ፤

20 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያምዕዙ ፡ ምክራብ ፡ ቅድሳትዩ ፡ ወያዓጥኑ ፡ በዕጣን ፡ ምዑዝ ፡
እስመ ፡ አምዕዝ ፡ ጼናሆሙ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ፍዳ ፤ እስከ ፡ ያነክሩ ፡ እምኔሁ ፡ መላእ
ክት ፡ ወሰብእ ፡ ጎቡረ ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ጼና ፡ መዓዛሆሙ ፡ በኃቤዩ ፡ ከመ ፡ ቍር
ባን ፡ ውኩፍ ፤

82 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይጸንፁ ፡ በሃይማኖት ፤

25 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ያመከንዩ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡ ርትዕት ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ አጸን
ዎሙ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ጸላእቶሙ ፤

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይገብሩ ፡ ትእዛዩ ፡ ወሥምረትዩ ፡ ወሥርዓትዩ ፡ ወይኳንኑ ፡
በፍትሕ ፡ ንጹሕ ፤

ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይሬእይዎሙ ፡ ለአባግዕዩ ፡ በሕግ ፡ ዘከመ ፡⁷⁸ አዘዝኩ ፡ በወን
30 ጌል ፡ ቅዱስ ፤

83 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይትሜጠው ፡ ሥጋዩ ፡ ወደምዩ ፡ በኩሉ ፡ ዕለት ፡ እስመ ፡
እሙንቱ ፡ ይሄልው ፡ ምስሌዩ ፤ ወአነሂ ፡ እሂሉ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡ ወኃበ ፡ ኩነኔ ፡
ኢይበጽሑ ፡ ወኢይሬእዩ ፡ ግሙራ ፤ ወእምውስተ ፡ መቃብራቲሆሙ ፡ [ዩ]ሐ
ውሩ ፡ ፍጡነ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ሕይወት ፡ ዘለዓለም ፤

APPARATUS | 3 ⁷⁴ For ኢዩ”. 4 ⁷⁵ Always so, for ”ኢዩ”. | ⁷⁶ For ደንግሥ ፡. 18 ⁷⁷ MS ወአ”.
29 ⁷⁸ For በከ”.

79 Blessed are those who give their vow and teach the faith to their brothers, for I will brighten their faces on the day of the Resurrection more than a multiplied seven times of the sun.

fol. 101v Blessed are those who liberate | the souls of the faithful from ser-
vitude for my name's sake, for I will liberate their body from burning 5
fire. Blessed are those who do not let an infidel subjugate the faithful,
their brothers, for I will not let the fire of hell reign over them.

80 Blessed are those who complete their days in austerity and nakedness for my name's sake, for I will clothe them with a great light that will not be measured or limited. 10

Blessed are those who are flogged for my name's sake, for I will be pleased with them.

Blessed are those who take up the infirm and the destitute, and let them into their houses, for my grace will live in their houses.

Blessed are those who open their treasures for the destitute, for the 15
treasure of my grace and my mercy will be open for them.

81 Blessed are those who hasten to come to church, for my angels will bring them to their honoured and exalted thrones (in heaven); and they will receive them on the day of the Resurrection.

p. 153 Blessed are those who bring offering to | my sanctuary from the 20
sweat of their foreheads and from the work of their hands, for it will be
accepted by me like the offering of Melchisedec.

Blessed are those who scent the shrine of my holy things⁹¹ and incense it with a fragrant incense, for I will scent their smell on the day of retribution, until both angels and people marble it. And the smell of 25
their fragrance will be with me like an accepted offering.

82 Blessed are those who are steadfast in faith.

Blessed are those who are tempted in the Orthodox faith, for I will make them strong against all their enemies.

Blessed are those who do my commandments, my good will, and 30
my precepts and who judge in clean justice.

Blessed are those who keep my sheep according to the law which I have ordered in the Holy Gospel.

83 Blessed are those who receive my body and my blood every day, for they will live with me, and I will be with them. They will not come 35
to judgment nor will ever see (it). They will go to eternal life directly
from their graves.

⁹¹ This could be a reference to the Holy Communion.

84 ብፀዓን፡ እለ፡ [ይ]ትቤዘውዎሙ፡ ለአኃዊሆሙ፡ [እ]ምግብርናተ፡ ኑኃፌ፡ እስመ፡ ኢይሬእይዎ፡ ለእሳተ፡ ገሃነም፡፤
[ብ]ፀዓን፡ እለ፡ ይዜክሩ፡ ስምየ፡ ወትረ፡ [ብ]ኩሉ፡ መዋዕሊሆሙ፡፤

85 [እስ]መ፡ ናሁ፡ እነ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ አኃውየ፡ ወፍቁራንየ፡ ዕቀቡ፡
5 ሃይ[ማ]፡ጥተክሙ፡ ወተሰፈው፡ ከመ፡ ትርአዩ፡ ኩሎ፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ፡ እምነ፡ fol. 102r
መዋዕለ፡ ዝንቱ፡ ዓለም፡፤ ወጽንሑ፡ ደኃሪተ፡ ተሰፋ፡ ዘአሰፈውኩክሙ፡
እስመ፡ ምንዳቤ፡ ይረክበክሙ፡ በውስተ፡ ዓለም፡ ወከማሁ፡ ተጋደሉ፡ ወኢ
ትንበሩ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ወአግዋሪክሙ፡ እንዘ፡ ይጻእሉክሙ፡ ወያኃሥሁ፡
ለክሙ፡ ሕሱመ፡

10 86 ወፍልሱ፡ እመካን፡ ኃበ፡ ካልእ፡ መካን፡፤ አማን፡ እብለክሙ፡ ኢይትፌ
ጸማ፡ አህጉራተ፡ እሰራኤል፡ እስከ፡ አመ፡ ይመጽእ፡ ወልደ፡ እንለ፡ እመሕ
ያው፡ ተዓቀቡ፡ እምነ፡ ብሑኦሙ፡ ለሊቃውንት፡ ወፈረሳዊያን፡ እስመ፡ በእ
ከየ፡ ምግባሮሙ፡ ይከልእዋ፡ ለነፍሶሙ፡ በዊዓ፡ ውስተ፡ መንግሥተ፡ ሰማ
ያት፡፤ ወኩሉ፡ ዘይሬእዮ፡ የኃሥሥ፡ በዊኦታ፡ ይከልእዎ፡ ወውእቶሙ፡
15 ያጸውርዎ፡ ጸረ፡ ክቡደ፡ ለሰብእ፡፤

87 አእምሩ፡ አኃዊየ፡፤ እስመ፡ ምጽኦቱ፡ ለፍዳ፡ ፍጡነ፡ ይከውን፡፤ ወሕ
ዝብ፡ ይከውኑ፡ መፍቀርያነ፡ መብልዕ፡ ወስታይ፡ ወለተዋስቦ፡ ወፍሥሐ፡
ወለምግባረ፡ ኃጢአት፡ እስከ፡ እመጽእ፡ እኩንን፡ ሕያዋነ፡ ወሙታነ፡
በከመ፡ ኮነ፡ በመዋዕሊሁ፡ ለኖኅ፡፤ እስመ፡ እሙንቱ፡ ነበሩ፡ ይትፈግዑ፡
20 እስከ፡ አመ፡ መጽእ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ፡ ማየ፡ አይኅ፡፤ እምቅድመ፡ ያእምሩ፡፤
ወከማሁ፡ ይከውን፡ ምጽኦትየ፡ ለኩነኔ፡ በከመ፡ ሠራቂ፡ ዘኢያአምሮ፡
ባዕለ፡ ቤት፡ እስከ፡ ይመጽእ፡ ከመ፡ ይሥርቅ፡ ንዋዮ፡፤ ወከማሁ፡ ይከውን፡
ምጽኦትየ፡ ሰዓተ፡ ዘኢያአምራ፡ ሰብእ፡ ወኢአሐዱሂ፡፤ ወበምጽኦትየ፡
ይትፈሣሕ፡ ዓለም፡ ወይሠዓር፡ ሐዘን፡ እምኔሆሙ፡፤ ትግሁኬ፡ አኃውየ፡
25 እምቅድመ፡ ይብጽሐክሙ፡⁷⁹ ጸላኢ፡ እኩይ፡

88 ትግሁ፡ እምቅድመ፡ ይብጻሕ፡ ሊቀ፡ ኩነኔ፡ ዘኢያኃድግ፡ ምንተኒ፡፤
ሉብውኬ፡ እምነ፡ ጸላኢ፡ እኩይ፡ ግበሩ፡ ሠናየ፡ ወኢትኅድጉ፡፤ አእምሩ፡
እስመ፡ ዝንቱ፡ መዋዕለ፡ ዓለም፡ የኃልፍ፡ ከመ፡ ሕልም፡፤

APPARATUS | 25 ⁷⁹ For "ጸሕ".

⁹² Hanafi?

84 Blessed are those who redeem their brothers from the servitude of the *nuḥafe*,⁹² for they will not see the fire of hell.

p. 154 Blessed are those who always remember my mane | in all their days.⁹³

fol. 102r **85** Behold, for I have told you, my brothers and my beloved ones. 5
Keep | your faith, and expect in faith to see all that I have told you concerning the time of this world. Wait for the later hope which I promised you, because tribulation will meet you in the world. Strive accordingly. Do not stay at the house of your neighbours while they insult you and seek bad things to happen to you. 10

86 Migrate from one place to another place. “Truly, I tell you, the cities of Israel will not be finished (visited by you) until the Son of Man comes.”⁹⁴ “Guard yourself from the yeast of the chiefs and the Pharisees”,⁹⁵ for they prevent themselves from entering into the Kingdom of Heaven by the wickedness of their deeds. And they prevent 15 everyone whom they witness seeking to enter it.⁹⁶ They load people with a heavy burden.⁹⁷

p. 155 **87** Know, my brothers, for my⁹⁸ coming for the retribution will be soon. People will be lovers of food and drink, marriage, joy, and (other) sinful deeds until I come to judge the living and the dead, as 20 has happened in the days of Noah. For they were surfeiting to the time the deluge came upon them before they knew (it).⁹⁹ My coming for judgement | will be similar; it will be like a thief whom the master of the house would not know until he comes to steal his money; so my coming will be at an hour which no people, even a single one, would 25 not know.¹⁰⁰ The world will rejoice at my coming. Grief will be abolished from them. Watch, therefore, my brothers, before the wicked enemy comes to you.

88 Watch before the Prince of Judgement, who will not ignore anything, comes. 30

Beware of the wicked enemy. Do good deeds; do not forsake (doing good deeds). Know that the days of (this) world will pass like a dream.

⁹³ The model for this long list of ‘blessed’ sentences is Matt. 5:2–12.

⁹⁴ Matt. 10:23.

⁹⁵ Matt. 16:6.

⁹⁶ Matt. 23:13.

⁹⁷ Luke 11:46.

⁹⁸ Lit. ‘his’.

⁹⁹ Matt. 24:37–39.

¹⁰⁰ Matt. 24:43; Rev. 16:15.

89 ሕፅቡ፡ አልባሲክሙ፡ እምቅድመ፡ ይጸውቡክሙ። ቅንኡኬ፡⁸⁰ እምቅ
 ድመ፡ ይምጻፍ፡⁸¹ መርጻዊ፡ ውእቱ፡ ይመጽእ፡ ለተቀብሎ፡ ሌሊተ፡ ወኢት
 ኑሙ፡ ከመ፡ ኢይስርቁ፡ እምኔክሙ፡ ብርሃነ፡ ማኅቶትክሙ። ወተመሰል
 ምን፡ [ለ]፳፻፲፭፡ ጠባባት፡ እስመ፡ ወንጌል፡ ይነግር፡ ዜናሆን፡ ወኢት
 5 ትመሰልምን፡ ለ፳፻፲፭፡ አብዳት፡ እማንቱ፡ እለ፡ ኢጾራ፡ ዘይተ፡ ምስሌ
 ሆን፡ በገማይዒሆን፡ ጊዜ፡ ይጸንሐሁ፡ ለመርጻዊ። ወሶበ፡ መጽአ፡ ኢያእ
 መራ፡ ምጽአቶ። ወጊዜ፡ አእመራ፡ ጎድጎዳ፡ ኅኅተ፡ ወአውሥኦን፡
 ወይቤሎን፡ ኢያእመርክን።⁸² ወይእዜኒ፡ አንትሙ፡ ዕቀቡ፡ ነፍስክሙ።⁸³
 ወኢትትጻወሩ፡ ወአስተዳልው፡ ስንቀክሙ፡ ለጊዜ፡ ምጽአትየ፡

fol. 102v

10 90 እምበለስ፡ አእምሩ፡ አምሳሊሁ፡ እምከመ፡ ለምለመ፡ አዕፁቂሁ፡ ወሠ
 ረፀ፡ ቁጽሉ፡ ይትጻወቅ፡ ከመ፡ በጽሐ፡ ጊዜሁ፡ ለማዕረር። ወከመዝ፡ አእ
 ምሩ፡ ጊዜ፡ ምጽአትየ፡ ለኩንኖ። ወሶበ፡ ትሬእዩ፡ ሕዝበ፡ እኩየ፡ በከመ፡
 ይቤ፡ ዳንኤል፡ ነቢይ። ናሁ፡ አማሰኑ፡ መካነ፡ መቅደስየ፡ አእምሩ፡ ከመ፡
 በጽሐት፡ ጊዜሃ፡ ለምጽአትየ። ወቦቱ፡ እፈድዮሙ፡ ለኩሉ፡ ዘሥጋ፡
 15 በከመ፡ ምጻባሩ።

91 አእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ ትንሣኤ፡ እመቃብር፡ ይከውን። በወርኃ፡ ኔሳን፡ ዘው
 እቱ፡ መርሞዳ፡ ወመርሞዳ፡ ብሂል፡ ሚያዝያ። ወቦቱ፡ አድኅኖ፡ ለአዳም፡
 ዘፈጠርክዎ፡ በአርአያየ፡ ወበአምሳልየ፡ እምኩሉ፡ ኃጣውኢሁ፡ ወቦቱ፡ ይከ
 ውን፡ ትንሣኤየ። ወበውእተ፡⁸⁴ ጊዜ፡ ይከውን፡ ፍዳ፡ ወእፈድዮ፡ ለኩሉ፡
 20 ፍጥረት፡ ወይእቲ፡ ዕለት፡ ዓውደ፡ ዓመት፡ ወጥንተ፡ መዋዕል፡ ዘፈጠርክዎ፡
 ለዓለም፡ ወባቲ፡ ይከውን፡ ዕለተ፡ እሁድ። አእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ በትንሣኤየ፡
 ይትነሥኡ፡ [ሙታን።] ወምድርኒ፡ ትትሐደስ፡ ወትኔይስ፡ ወትሴኒ፡ ወተወ
 ፅእ።⁸⁵ ሰብለ፡ ወትፈሪ፡ ፍሬ፡ ሐዲስ፡ ፍጹመ።

92 አሌ[] ሎቱ፡ ዘእረክቦ፡ በውእቱ፡ ጊዜ፡ ዘከህደ፡ ብየ፡
 25 ወይሎሙ፡ ዘእረክቦ { } ሙ፡ ምዩጣነ፡ ወውፁዓነ፡ እምኔየ፡ እስመ፡ አነ፡
 እሬስዮሙ፡ መብልዓ፡ ለእሳት፡ ዘኢይጠፍዕ።
 ወይሎሙ፡ እለ፡ ይሳለቁ፡ ሳዕለ፡ እለ፡ የአምኑ፡ ብየ፡ እስመ፡ በዕለተ፡
 ኩነኔ፡ ይሳለቅዎሙ፡ መለእክትየ፡ በቅድመ፡ ኩሉ፡ ሰብእ።

APPARATUS | 1 ⁸⁰ For ንቅሁኬ፡? 2 ⁸¹ With supralinear ም. 8 ⁸² For ኢየአምረ”. | ⁸³ For ”ሰ”.
 19 ⁸⁴ For ”ቱ፡. 23 ⁸⁵ For ወታ”.

¹⁰¹ Qənaḥ u.
¹⁰² ‘The host’?

89 Wash your clothes before you are invited. Wake up¹⁰¹ before the bridegroom comes; he¹⁰² will come at night to receive him by night. Do not sleep lest (thieves) steal from you the light of your candles. Imitate the five wise virgins. For the Gospel tells their story. Do not imitate the five foolish virgins. These are the ones who did not carry with them oil in their flasks while they waited for the bridegroom. When he came, they did not know his coming. When they knew, they knocked the door. He answered them, saying, “I do not know you.”¹⁰³ And now, guard yourself. Do not be | blinded. Prepare your provision | for the time of my coming. 10

fol. 102v
p. 156

90 Know the example of the fig tree. When its branches are tender and its leaves sprout, it will be known that the time for harvesting has come.¹⁰⁴ Similarly, know the time of my coming to judge when you see wicked people—as the Prophet Daniel said, “Behold, they spoiled the building of my sanctuary”¹⁰⁵—know that the time of my coming has arrived. In it, I will requite each of the flesh according to his deed.¹⁰⁶

91 Know that the Resurrection from the grave will take place in the month of Nesan, which is Bermudeh, and Bermudeh means Miyazya. In it, I will save Adam, whom I created in my image and likeness, from all his sins. And my resurrection will be in it. Retribution will take place at that time (when) I reward every creature. That day is New Year and the beginning of days, which I created for the world. And (the last day of) Sunday¹⁰⁷ will fall in it. Know that [the dead] will rise at my resurrection.¹⁰⁸ And the earth will be renewed; it will be improved and beautified. It will produce (much) harvest, and will be fruitful with fresh and perfect fruits.

92 Woe to him whom I will find at that time denying me.

Woe to them whom I will find turned and departed from, for I will make them food for the unquenchable fire. 30

Woe to them who mock those who believe in me, for, on the day of my judgement, | my angels will mock them before all people.

p. 157

¹⁰³ Cf. Matt. 25:1–13. Actually, ‘You did not know’. Here it is clear that the authority who rejected them, ‘the lord’, is the host or master of the ceremony, not the bridegroom.

¹⁰⁴ Cf. Matt. 24:32.

¹⁰⁵ Dan. 11:31; Matt. 24:15.

¹⁰⁶ Cf. Isa. 59:18; Rom. 2:6; Rev. 2:23; 20:13. See also *Anaphora of the Three Hundred*, Marcos Daoud and Marsie Hazen 1954, 128 (§ 64).

¹⁰⁷ Arabic, *al’ahar*.

¹⁰⁸ This theology agrees with an ancient commentary of Matthew; see Getatchew Haile 2021.

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ያስተዋድዩ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያመዝብሩ ፡ አብያተ ፡ ክርስቲያናት ፡
እስመ ፡ እሳተ ፡ ገሃነም ፡ ታውዲ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ።

93 ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ያወስቡ ፡ ዘኢኮነት ፡ ክርስቲያናዊተ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙ-
ንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ ምድረ ፡ ዘይከይድዋ ፡ ከማሁ ፡ ይትከዩዱ ፡ በውስተ ፡ እሳተ ፡
5 ገሃነም ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያኃብሩ ፡⁸⁶ ምስለ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ጸላእትየ ፡ ወእለ ፡ ይበልዑ ፡
ወይሰትየ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እኄልቆሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ገሃነም ።

94 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይሳለቁ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ካህናትየ ፡ ወይትናገሩ ፡ በላዕሌሆሙ ፡
ዘኢርእዩ ፡ ዘኢኮነ ፡ ርቱዓ ፡ ፍትሐ ፡ እስመ ፡ ማኅደሮሙ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ውስተ ፡
10 ኩነኔ ፡ ዘለዓለም ፡ ኃበ ፡ ብካይ ፡ ወሐቂየ ፡ ስነን ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይሳለቁ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ወደምየ ፡ እስመ ፡ ኩነኔሆሙ ፡
ዕፁብ ፡ ዘአልቦ ፡ ማኅለቅተ ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ የሐጉሉ ፡ አባግዕየ ።
ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይደመስሱ ፡ ስምየ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ መጽሐፍ ።

fol. 103r

15 95 ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ያስተዋድዩ ፡ አኃዊሆሙ ፡ {አኃዊሆሙ} ኃበ ፡ ነገ
ሥት ፡ ወመኳንንተ ፡ ዓለም ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለአብዕልት ፡ ፈድፋድ ፡ ዘኢይሁቡ ፡ ለነዳይ ፡ ወኢይነኪዩ ፡⁸⁷
እምነ ፡ ብዕሎሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ መንበሮሙ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ምስለ ፡ ባዕል ፡ ዘኢወሀቦ ፡
ለአልአዛር ፡ ውስተ ፡ እቶነ ፡ እሳት ።

20 ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይትናገሩ ፡ ሐሰተ ፡ በላዕለ ፡ አኃዊሆሙ ፡ ምዕመናን ፡
ወያወፅኡ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ነገረ ፡ እኩየ ፡ ኅቡአ ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይሰርቁ ፡ ንዋየ ፡ ሰብእ ፡
ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይበልዑ ፡ ፃማሆሙ ፡ ለነዳያን ፡ ወለምስኪናን ፡ በትዕግ
ልት ፡ ወበሀይድ ።

25 96 ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይሰምዑ ፡ ቃለ ፡ ስብከትየ ፡ ይስሕቁ ፡ ወይሳለቁ ፡ ላዕሌ
ሆሙ ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ይረግምዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትየ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲ-
ያን ፡⁸⁸ ንጽሕት ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ ዘይነሥእ ፡⁸⁹ ዕብነ ፡ እምነ ፡ ሕንጸተ ፡ ዐብያተ ፡ ክርስቲያናት ።

30 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይዛለፍዋ ፡ ለአሐቲ ፡ ዕብን ፡ አባግዕትየ ።⁹⁰
ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይትዓ-
ደው ፡ ትእዛዘ ፡ ካህናትየ ። እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ወሀብክዎሙ ፡ ስልጣነ ፡ ወኃረይክ
ዎሙ ፡ እምቅድመ ፡ ይትፈጠር ፡ ዓለም ።

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያስተሐቅርዎሙ ፡ ወይሚንንዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትየ ፡ እስመ ፡
35 አንጻሕክዎሙ ፡ ወቀደስክዎሙ ፡ እምኩሉ ፡ ፍጥረት ፡ አስማቲሆሙ ፡
ጽሑፍ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ በኩር ፡ ሰማያዊት ።

APPARATUS | 6 ⁸⁶ For የ”. 17 ⁸⁷ For ”ክ”. 28 ⁸⁸ With supralinear ን. 29 ⁸⁹ For ለእለ ፡ ይነሥ
ኡ ፡. 30 ⁹⁰ For እምነ ፡ አ”?

Woe to them who make false charges in order to plunder churches, for the fire of hell will burn their bodies.

93 Woe to them who marry (a woman) who is not a Christian, for they will be an earth which one treads. They will be trodden likewise in the fire of hell. 5

Woe to them who associate with Jews, my enemies, and who eat and drink with them, for I will add them (to those) in hell.¹⁰⁹

94 Woe to them who mock at my priests and say about them what they have not seen, what is not a right criticism, for their abode will be in eternal damnation, where is weeping and gnashing of teeth. 10

Woe to them who mock at my body and my blood, for their punishment will be a sever one that has no end.

Woe to them who cause the loss of my sheep.

fol. 103r Woe to them who efface my name from | books.

95 Woe to them who bring false charges against their brothers to 15 kings and governors of the world.

Woe to the very rich who do not give to the poor and do not touch their wealth, for their living will be with the rich man who did not give to Lazarus, in the furnace of fire.¹¹⁰

Woe to them who tell lies against their brothers, the faithful, and in- 20 vent in hiding bad words against them.

Woe to them who steal others' money.

Woe to them who eat the toil of the poor and the destitute in robbery and looting.

p. 158 **96** | Woe to them who hear the words of my preaching (and) laugh 25 at and mock them.

Woe to them who curse my priests (who serve) inside the pure church.

Woe to them who take any one stone¹¹¹ from the buildings of the churches. Woe to them who rebuke any¹¹² of my sheep. 30

Woe to them who are excommunicated by the mouth of my priests.

Woe to them who violate the orders of my priests, for I have given them authority and have chosen them before the world was created.

Woe to them who regard with contempt and who despise my priests, for I have cleansed them and sanctified them of all creations. 35 Their names are written in the firstborn heavenly church.

¹⁰⁹ Cf. *Sinodos*, *ʿEmdāhrä* 'argä, no. 18, in Bausi 1995, I, 23–24.

¹¹⁰ Cf. Luke 16:19–31.

¹¹¹ Apparently, 'a Christian'.

¹¹² Lit. 'stone' (*əbn*) probably for *əmənnä*.

- 97 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያረውዩ ፡ ከርሃሙ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ሀለው ፡ አኃዊሆሙ ፡ ርጉ ባን ፡ ወጽሙዓን ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያረኩሱ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ሕዝበ ፡ ነገ[ድ] ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይከሥቱ ፡ ነገረ ፡ ከንቶ ፡ ወያኃብኡ ፡⁹¹ ቃለ ፡ ርቱዓ ።
 5 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይትሀከዩ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያብኡ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ለአኃዊሆሙ ፡⁹² በጊዜ ፡ ምንዳቤሆሙ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡⁹³ ዓዲ ፡ ኣሌሎን ፡ ለአንስት ፡ እለ ፡ ያረኩሳ ፡ ሥጋሆን ፡ ምስለ ፡ ሆናፌ ።
 ወይሎን ፡ ለአንስት ፡ እለ ፡ ይትዋሰባ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ዘኢኮነ ፡ ክርስቲያናዊ ።
 10 98 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡ *ለክርስቲያን ፡ ንስቲተ ፡⁹⁴ በውስተ ፡ ምኵራብ ፡ ቅድሳትዮ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ ለተባዕት ፡ ወለአንስት ፡ ሶበ ፡ ይኔጽርዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትዮ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡ ወኢይቀውሙ ፡ ሎሙ ፡ ወኢይትቁበልዎሙ ፡ ፍጡነ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይረውጹ ። ወካህናትሰ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይለብሱ ፡ ልብሰ ፡ መላእክትዮ ፡ ወአነ ፡ ሀሎኩ ፡
 15 ምስሌሆሙ ፡ ወእሙንቱ ፡ ምኵራብ ፡ ቅድሳትዮ ፡ ወአነ ፡ ጎጎጥር ፡ ውስቴ fol. 103v ቶሙ ።
 ወይሎቱ ፡ ለብእሲ ፡ ዘውስተ ፡ ዕዴሁ ፡ ሠሪቅ ፡ ወቀቲል ፡ እምኃዩሶ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ኢተወልደ ፡ እምኔሶ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይእስሩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ክሳዱ ፡ ዕብነ ፡ ዐቢዩ ፡ ወይትወረው ፡ ውስተ ፡ ባሕር ።
 20 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይትመጠው ፡ ሥጋዩ ፡ ወደምዩ ፡ እምድኅረ ፡ በልዑ ፡ ወሰትዩ ።
 99 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይበልዑ ፡ ናዕተ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወይገብሩ ፡ ናዕተ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ።
 ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይገብሩ ፡ ፋሲካዩ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይሄልው ፡ ምስሌዩ ፡
 25 ውስተ ፡ ገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡ ወስብሐተ ፡ መንግሥትዮ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ ብዙኃ[] እከዩ ፡ እለ ፡ ይቀትሉ ፡ ነፍሰ ፡ እምነ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ወአልቦሙ ፡ ስርዩተ ፡ በኃቤዩ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያጌብርዎሙ ፡ ለሰብእ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይክህዱኒ ፡ ወከማሁ ፡ ለውሉዶሙሂ ፡ ወለአኃዊሆሙኒ ።
 30 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ዩሓውሩ ፡ ኃበ ፡ በዐለ ፡ ከሀዲያን ፡ ወይበልዑ ፡ እምነ ፡ ዘዘብሐ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ኢይሜህሩ ፡ ለውሎዶሙ ፡⁹⁵ ቃለ ፡ ስብከትዮ ።
 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰምዑ ፡ ቃለ ፡ መጥቅዕ ፡ ወኢያሐውሩ ፡⁹⁶ ፍጡነ ፡ በጉጉዓ ፡ ለጸልዮ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ።

APPARATUS | 4 ⁹¹ For ወዩ". 5 ⁹² Probably ኣ". 7 ⁹³ For "ሎን ፡. 10 ⁹⁴ Probably ንስቲተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡, an alternate expression to ንኡሰ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡, 'Minor Christians', i. e. Catecumen. Since these are under religious instruction to be prepared to be baptized and be full Christians, they are not allowed to stay in church when Communion (ቅድሳት ፡, 'Holy Things') service is performed. 32 ⁹⁵ For "ሉ". 33 ⁹⁶ For "ዩ".

97 Woe to them who (feed and) water their bellies while their brothers are hungry and thirsty.

Woe to them who pollute their body with strange¹¹³ people.

Woe to them who expose vain matters and hide right words.

Woe to them who are reluctant to baptize their brothers at the time of their tribulation.

Woe and alas to women who pollute their bodies with a *honafe*.

Woe to women who intermarry with a non-Christian.

98 Woe to the Christians who come a few times (only) to the shrine of my holy things.¹¹⁴ 10

p. 159 Woe to | men and women who, when they see my priests coming, do not stand up for them, and do not receive them running quickly. When priests are clothed with the garb of my angels, I become with
fol. 103v them. They are the shrine of my holy things. And I | dwell in them.

Woe to the man in whose hand there is thievery and murder. It were better for him, if he were not born. It were better for him that they tie a big stone to his neck and be thrown into the sea.¹¹⁵

Woe to them who receive my body and blood after they have eaten and drunk.

99 Woe to those who eat the unleavened bread of the Jews and celebrate (the rite of) the Unleavened Bread with them.¹¹⁶ 20

Blessed are those who celebrate my Easter, for they will live with me in the Garden of Joy and the glory of my kingdom.

Woe, much evil to those who kill Christian souls; they will not have remission (of sin) from me. 25

Woe to them who force people and their children and their brothers to deny me.

Woe to them who go to the feast of deniers and eat from what they have slaughtered.

Woe to them who do not teach their children the words of my preaching.

Woe to them who hear the sound of bell and do not go quickly in haste to pray in church.

¹¹³ *Nägä[d]*.

¹¹⁴ Actually, 'Woe to those Christians who bring corruption to church'.

¹¹⁵ Cf. Matt. 18:6.

¹¹⁶ *Sinodos, Bā'ädä Qäleməntos*, no. 66, Bausi 1995, I, 171.

100 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይገብሩ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣኤ ፡ ሢጠ ፡ ወምስያጠ ፡
አው ፡ ዘያርጉ ፡ መዛግብተ ፡ ንዋዮሙ ፡ ወእለሂ ፡ ይነግዱ ፡ እስመ ፡ በእንተ ፡
ዝንቱ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ እቲታነ ፡ ወርሑቃነ ፡ እምጸጋ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡
ቅድስት ፤ መሐልኩ ፡ በመዝራዕትየ ፡ አዚዝ ፡ ወበመስቀልየ ፡ ማኅየዊ ፡ ወበ
5 የማንየ ፡ ልዑል ፤ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ይከውኑ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣኤ ፡ ከመ ፡
ሰዶም ፡ ወገሞራ ፡ ኢይረክቡ ፡ ዕረፍተ ፡ በውስተ ፡ ገሃነም ፡ ወአልቦ ፡ ከማ
ሆሙ ፡ ዘይትኳነን ፤

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይትገናደዩ ፡ ለግብረ ፡ ንዋዮሙ ፡ ኃላፊ ፡ ለነሂአ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡
ወደምየ ፤

101 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰምዑ ፡ ቃለ ፡ መሰንቆ ፡ ወዕንዚራ ፡ ወተውኔተ ፡ ወከ
በሮ ፡ እለ ፡ ኢይሰድድዎሙ ፡ ወኢያርሕቅዎሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡
እንተ ፡ በውስቲታ ፡ ይጠብሑ ፡ ካህናት ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ እመ ፡
ኢገሠጽዎሙ ፡ አንሰ ፡ እመይጥ ፡ ገጽየ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ወእፊኑ ፡ አንበጣ ፡
ወደገብየ ፡⁹⁷ ወኩሉ ፡ ዕዪ ፡ ለፍሬ ፡ ምድሮሙ ፡ ወለተግባሮሙ ፡ ወዝልጋሴ ፡

15 ለእንሰሳሆሙ ፡ ወብድብደ ፡ ወፈጸንተ ፡ ለሰብአሙ ፡ ወለውሉዶሙ ፡ ወለአንሰ
ቲያሆሙ ፡ ወእፊኑ ፡ አራዊተ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይብልዑ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይትናፍቁ ፡⁹⁸ መለኮተ ፡ ትሰብዕትየ ፡ ቃል ፡ ቀዳማዊ ፡ አነ ፡
ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ዕሩይ ፡ | ምስለ ፡ አቡየ ፡ ወምስለ ፡ መንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፤

fol. 104r

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይሰድድዎሙ ፡ ለካህናትየ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያ
20 ንየ ፡ ወቤተ ፡ ምሥዋዕየ ፤

102 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይደመሩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ በዐሎሙ ፡ ለአይሁድ ፡ ወይገብሩ
ፍሥሐ ፡ ወፍግግ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፤

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይሁቡ ፡ ውሉዶሙ ፡ ለከሀዲያን ፡ ከመ ፡ ያጥብው ፡ ሐሊ
ቦሙ ፡ ወይሕፅኑ ፡ ሎሙ ።

25 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ያወሰቡ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወእለ ፡ ይትዋሰቡ ፡ ኃቤ
ሆሙ ፤

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይክህዱ ፡ መስቀልየ ፤

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይለብሱ ፡ አልባሰ ፡ ልምሉማተ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ፡ ኃላፊ ፡
ወእለ ፡ ይጸግቡ ፡⁹⁹ ከርሃሙ ፡ በመብልዕ ፡ ጥዕምት ፡ ወበመስቲ፡ ሠናይ ፡
30 እንዝ ፡ አኃዊሆሙ ፡ ነዳያን ፡ በሕርትምና ፡ ወበረኃብ ፡ ወበጽምዕ ፡ ወበዕርቃን ፡
እም ፡ ልብስ ፡

ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይነውሙ ፡ {እለ ፡ ይነውሙ ፡} ሌሊተ ፡ ዕሁድ ፡ ወእለሂ ፡
ይገብዑ ፡ ድኅረ ፡ እምጸሎት ፡ ወመዓልቲሂ ፡ ዘይነውም ፡ ወዘይትሀከይ ፡ እም
አንብቦ ፡ መጻሕፍት ፤

35 ወይሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ይዘምው ፡ ተባዕተ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ተባዕት ፤ መሀልኩ ፡ በመንበ
ርየ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ ኢይሬእዩ ፡ ገጽየ ፡ ግሙራ ፡ ወይከውን ፡

APPARATUS | 14 ⁹⁷ For ደገብደ ፡ 17 ⁹⁸ For ”ፈ” . 29 ⁹⁹ For ያ” .

p. 160 **100** Woe to them who do | transactions on the day of my resurrection or open their treasures and to those who do business or travel, for, because of these (activities), they will be removed and kept far from the holy grace of Christianity.¹¹⁷ I swear by my mighty arm, by my life-giving cross, and by my exalted right hand¹¹⁸ that they will be like Sodom and Gomorrah on the day of my resurrection. They will not find respite in hell; no one will be punished like them.

Woe to them who are late to receive my body and my blood because of work pertaining to their transient property.

101 Woe to them who listen to the sound of violin, lyre, a performance, and the drum (and) do not chase them away or force them to stay far from the church in which priests slaughter my body. If they do not rebuke them when they do these (things), I will turn my face away from them; and I will send locusts, grasshoppers, and all (kinds of) worms upon the fruit of their land and their labour, (and bring) skin disease upon their beasts, and pestilence and small pox upon their people, their children, and their wives. I will send wild animals to eat their bodies.

fol. 104r Woe to them who doubt the divinity in my humanity. The first word is I, Jesus Christ, who is equal | to my Father and the Holy Spirit. **20**

Woe to them who banish my priests from my church and the house of my altar.

102 Woe to them who join in a feast of the Jews, and do happiness and surfeit with them.

Woe to them who give their children to deniers so they may nurse them and bring them up on their behalf. **25**

Woe to them who marry from among the Jews and who intermarry with them.

Woe to them who deny my cross.

Woe to them who wear soft clothes on their transient bodies and who satiate their stomach with tasty food and with good drink while their poor brothers are in misery, hunger, thirst, and naked of clothes. **30**

Woe to them who sleep during the night on Sunday and withhold themselves from prayer, and (to him) who sleeps during its day and is sloth to read the Scriptures. **35**

Woe to those men who fornicate with men. I swear by my holy throne that these will never see my face. Their abode will be with Ju-

¹¹⁷ Or 'grace of holy Christianity'.

¹¹⁸ Cf. Isa. 62:8.

ማኅደርሙ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ይሁዳ ፡ አስቆሮታዊ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ብካይ ፡ ወሐቂየ ፡ ስነን ፡
 ኃበ ፡ ጸናፌ ፡ ጽልመት ፡ እመሂ ፡ ቀሲስ ፡ ወእመሂ ፡ ዲያቆን ፡ ዘይገብር ፡
 ዘንተ ፡ ይረውጽ ፡ ወይበውዕ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ከመ ፡ ያዕርግ ፡
 ዕጣነ ፡ ወዲያቆንሂ ፡ አመ ፡ ይትለእክ ፡ አው ፡ ከመ ፡¹⁰⁰ ይግበሩ ፡ ወይጥብሑ ፡
 5 ሥጋየ ፡ ወደምየ ፡ ይመጽኡ ፡ መላእክት ፡ ወየአሰሩ ፡ ዕደዊሆሙ ፡ ድኅሪተ ፡
 ወይመትሩ ፡ ክሳይሙ ፡ በሰይፍ ፡፤ ወሥጋሆሙኒ ፡ ይመውት ፡ ወነፍሶሙኒ ፡
 ባሕቲታ ፡ ታንሶሱ ፡ ከመ ፡ ምትሐት ፡ ወጽላሎት ፡፤
 103 እስመ ፡ ነገርኩክሙ ፡ ወእርአይኩክሙ ፡ አኢኃውየ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ኅቡዓትየ ፡፤
 ወይእይኒ ፡ እኤዝዘክሙ ፡ ዘይደሉ ፡ ዕቀቡ ፡ ወለብው ፡ ወአእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡
 10 ሰማይ ፡ ወምድር ፡ የኃልፍ ፡ ወቃልየሰ ፡ ኢያኃልፍ ፡፤ አእምሩ ፡ ወኢትናፍቁ ፡
 ሶበ ፡ ትሬእዩኒ ፡ ስቁለ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ዕፀ ፡ መስቀል ፡ ማእከለ ፡ ፪ፈያት ፡ ወትሬእይ
 ምሙ ፡ ለመኳንንተ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይፈትሑ ፡ ላዕሌየ ፡ ፍትሐ ፡ ኩነኔ ፡፤

104 ኩኑ ፡ በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አኃዊየ ፡ ኅሩያነ ፡ ወድልዋነ ፡፤
 ወትከውን ፡¹⁰¹ በይዕቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ጽልመት ፡ ወቆባር ፡ ደመና ፡ ወዝናም ፡ ወሐ
 15 ዘን ፡ ዕፁብ ፡ ፍርሃት ፡ ወረዓድ ፡፤
 ወይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ጽዕቅት ፡ ብካይ ፡ ወሰቆቃው ፡ ተደለው ፡ ለደኃሪት ፡ ዕለተ ፡
 ትንሣኤየ ፡
 በይዕቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አልቦ ፡ ውስቴቱ ፡ ንስሐ ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይበዝግ ፡ ገዓር ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ኃጥአን ፡ እለ ፡ ኢገብሩ ፡ ፈቃድየ ፡፤
 20 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ያስተርኢ ፡ ፍናዋትየ ፡ ዘያሐውሩ ፡¹⁰² ዲበ ፡ ባሕር ፡ ወይ
 ብስ ፡፤¹⁰³
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ዕሩያን ፡ መኳንንት ፡ ወኩኑናን ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ኢይክል ፡ ይትመካህ ፡ ባዕል ፡ በብዕሉ ፡፤ በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡
 ይከውን ፡¹⁰⁴ ባዕል ፡ ወነዳይ ፡ ዕሩይ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ኢሐዱ ፡ ማኅደር ፡፤

fol. 104v

25 105 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይሣዓር ፡¹⁰⁵ ፍትሐ ፡ መኳንንት ፡ ወስልጣናት ፡ ወአጋዕ
 ዝት ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይትፌሥሐ ፡ ወይትሐሠየ ፡ ጸድቃን ፡ እለ ፡ ተተምቁ ፡
 በስመ ፡ አብ ፡ ወወልድ ፡ ወመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡፤ ወሕርትምና ፡ ለከህድያን ፡ ወዓ
 ላዊያን ፡፤
 30 106 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ ፍርሀት ፡ ወክህ ፡ ወድንጋዜ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ረሲ
 ዓን ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አልቦ ፡ ውስቴቱ ፡¹⁰⁶ ብርሃነ ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አልቦቱ ፡ ሕልቀተ ፡ ወኢኅልፈተ ፡ ወኢተፍጻሜተ ፡፤
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ያስተርኢ ፡ ኃይለ ፡ መለኮትየ ፡ ለኩሉ ፡ ፍጥረት ፡፤
 35 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይደነግፁ ፡ ወይፀልም ፡ ገጸሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ፀረፉ ፡ ላዕሌየ ፡፤

APPARATUS | 4 ¹⁰⁰ For አመ ፣? 14 ¹⁰¹ For ወይከ? 20 ¹⁰² For ዘየ? 21 ¹⁰³ For ወየ? 24 ¹⁰⁴
 For ኑ ፣? 25 ¹⁰⁵ For ይሠ? 32 ¹⁰⁶ For ኃ ፣.

das Iscariot in (the place of) weeping and gnashing of teeth, at the outer darkness. (If) one does this, whether a priest or a deacon, (and) runs and enters church, (the priest) to lift up the incense and the deacon to attend, or (both) to prepare and slaughter my body and my blood, the angels will come and tie their hands at their backs, and cut off their necks with a sword. Their bodies will die and their souls will wander by themselves like a phantom and a shadow.

p. 161 **103** I have told you and showed you, | O my brothers, all my secrets. And now I command you that which is proper. Keep, understand, and know that heaven and earth will pass away but my words 10 will not pass away.¹¹⁹ Know and do not doubt when you see me crucified on a wood cross between two thieves, and you see the Jewish officials sentencing me with a sentence of punishment.

104 My brothers, be chosen ones and ready on that day.

On that day, there will be darkness, mist, cloud, rain, severe grief, 15 fear, and quiver.

fol. 104v That day will be distressing; there will be crying, and lamentation. Be ready for the latter day, | (which is) my resurrection.

On that day, there will be no repentance.

On that day, agony will increase on sinners who did not do my will. 20

On that day, my ways that are stretched over seas and land will appear.¹²⁰

On that day, rulers and the ruled will be equal.

On that day, the wealthy cannot boast of his wealth.

On that day, the wealthy and the poor will be equal (living) in one 25 dwelling.

105 On that day, the judgement of rulers, authorities, and lords will be abolished.¹²¹

p. 162 On that day, | the righteous, who are baptized in the name of the Father, the Son, and Holy Spirit, will rejoice and be happy, and misery 30 will be with the deniers and the heretics.

106 On that day, there will be fear, uproar, and quiver on the ungodly.

On that day, there will be no light.

Of that day there will be neither consumption nor passing nor end. 35

On that day, the power of my divinity will appear to all creations.

¹¹⁹ Matt. 24:35.

¹²⁰ Isa. 43:16. Or 'On that day, my ways will appear for those who travel on sea and land'.

¹²¹ Cf. 1 Cor. 15:24; 1 Pet. 3:22.

በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይረክቦሙ ፡ ምንዳቤ ፡ ዕፁብ ፡ ለእለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ስምየ ፡ ወይሌ ፡ ነዋሃ ፡ ይወርድ ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አልቦ ፡ ውስቴቱ ፡¹⁰⁷ ፀሐየ ፡ ወወርኃ ፡ ወኢከዋክብተ ፡ ዘይሠርቁ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያብርሀ ፡ በከመ ፡ ቀዳሚ ፡ ብርሃኖሙ ።
 5 በውእቱ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ዕጠውሞ ፡ ለሰማይ ፡ በዕደዮ ።
 በውእቱ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አስተርኢ ፡ ኃይልየ ፡ በውስቴቱ ።

107 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ እከሥት ፡ መካነ ፡ ርግዘትየ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ረገዙኒ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ በዕደዋሆሙ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይነጽሩ ፡¹⁰⁸ ወስልጣነ ፡¹⁰⁹ ክሂሎትየ ።
 10 አሜሃ ፡ የሐዝኑ ፡ ወይቴክዙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘሰቀሉ ፡ ሥጋየ ።

108 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ እፌኑ ፡ መላእክትየ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይሌልዩ ፡ ክርዳደ ፡ እምነ ፡ ስርናይ ፡ ወየአስርዎሙ ፡ በበከላስስቲሆሙ ፡ ወያውዕይዎሙ ፡ በእሳት ፡ ዘኢይጠፍዕ ፡ ወያስተጋብኡ ፡ ስርናየ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መዛግብትየ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ ማዕፀድ ፡ ለረሲዓን ።
 15 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ ኃፍረት ፡ ለኃጥአን ፡ ሰብእ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ መላእክትየ ፡
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ እከሥት ፡ ወአርኑ ፡ ኅዋሃወ ፡¹¹⁰ እሳተ ፡ ገሃነም ፡ ወለኩሎሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ክህዱ ፡ ስምየ ፡
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ ላህ ፡ ወትካዝ ።

20 109 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ ዘኢኮነ ፡ እምቅድሚሁ ፡ ወዘኢይከውን ፡ እምድኅሬሁ ፡ ከማሁ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ኢይበቀኅዎ ፡ | ለብእሲ ፡ ትካዘ ፡ ወሐዘነ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይትፈደይ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ለለ፩፩ በከመ ፡ ምግባሩ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይትከሠት ፡ መጽሐፈ ፡ ዕዳ ፡ ወያነብብ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ዘገብረ ።

25 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አልቦ ፡ ውስቴቱ ፡ አድልዎ ፡ ገጽ ፡ ወኢነሂኦ ፡ ሕልዎን ።
 110 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ፍጹም ፡ ፍትሕ ፡ ወርትዕ ። ወመኩንን ፡ ይፈዲ ፡ እሙነ ። በውእቱ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ኢይበቀኅዕ ፡ ተዋስቦ ፡¹¹¹ ውስቴቱ ፡ ወኢይክል ፡ ብእሲ ፡ ያድኅን ፡ ፍቁሮ ።
 በይእቲ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይትጋብኡ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ ወይቀውሙ ፡ ዕራቃኒሆሙ ፡ በቅድመ ፡ መንበረ ፡ ሰብሐት ፡ ዐውደ ፡ ምኩናንየ ።

fol. 105r

APPARATUS | 3 ¹⁰⁷ For ”ታ” . 9 ¹⁰⁸ For ”ኔ” . | ¹⁰⁹ For ሰ”” 17 ¹¹⁰ For ጎ” . 27 ¹¹¹ For ተዋሥኦ ኦ” .

On that day, those who blaspheme against me will quiver and their faces will blacken.

On that day, severe tribulation will meet those who denied my name; a prolonged woe will come down upon them.

On that day, there will be no sun or moon, or stars which will rise to shine with their light as in the past.

On that day, I will roll up the sky with my hand.

On that day, I will show my power.

107 On that day, I will reveal the place of my piercing, where the Jews pierced me with their hands. 10

On that day, (the Jews) will see the authority of my ability.

At that time, they will grieve and be distressed for having crucified my body.

108 On that day, I will dispatch my angels to separate the tares from the wheat and tie them each into separate sheaves and burn them with 15
p. 163 unquenchable | fire, and gather the wheat into my granaries.¹²²

On that day, mowing the ungodly will take place.

On that day, there will be shame on sinful people before my angels.

On that day, I will reveal and open the gates of the fire of hell for all who denied my name. 20

On that day, there will be lamentation and sorrow.

109 On that day, that which has not happened before, and the like of which will not happen afterwards, will happen.¹²³

fol. 105r On that day, | sadness and grief will not avail man.

On that day, everyone will be rewarded according to his deed.¹²⁴ 25

On that day, the book of debts will be opened and (each) will read what he has done.¹²⁵

On that day, there will be no partiality¹²⁶ or taking of bribes.

110 On that day, there will be perfect justice and integrity. The judge will requite in the truth. On that day, (relationship by) marriage¹²⁷ will not be beneficial; and a man will not be able to save his beloved one.

On that day, all people will come together and stand naked before the throne of glory, which is my court of justice.

¹²² Matt. 3:12; 13:30; 13:39; Luke 3:17.

¹²³ Matt. 24:21.

¹²⁴ Isa. 59:18; Rom. 2:6; Rev. 2:32; 20:13.

¹²⁵ Rev. 20:12.

¹²⁶ Eph. 6:9.

¹²⁷ 'Litigation'?

በይእቲ፡ ዕለት፡ እከሥት፡ አንቀጸ፡ ብርሃን፡ በህየ፡ ወይትፈለጡ፡ ኃጥአን፡
 እምነ፡ ጻድቃን፡ ወይትፈታሕ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ፡ በከመ፡ ገብሩ፡ በይእቲ፡
 ዕለት፡ ፍትሕ፡ ወርትዕ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ሐሰት፡ ወአልቦ፡ ውስቴቱ፡ ትዕግልት፡
 ወኢአድልዎ ።
 5 ወይእዜኒ፡ አኃዊየ፡ በይእቲ፡ ዕለት፡ ይትኃረዩ፡ ኅሩያን፡ ወይትፈለጡ፡ ንጹ-
 ሐን ።

Chapter 35

1 ወሶበ፡ ይቤ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ዘንተ፡ ትእዛዘ ። ወይቤ
 ሎሙ፡ ለአርዳኢሁ፡ ተንሥኡ፡ ንሖር፡ ኃበ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም፡ ከመ፡ ይትፈ-
 10 ጸም፡ ላዕሌነ፡ ትንቢተ፡ ነቢያት፡ እምቅድመ፡ ያግብእኒ፡ ይሁዳ፡ ኃበ፡ አይ-
 ሁድ፡ አልዕሉ፡ አዕይንቲክሙ፡ ወነጽሩ፡ ኃበ፡ ገራህት፡ ዘከመ፡ ጸዕደወ፡
 ወበጽሐ፡ ለማዕረር ። አእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ ማዕረር፡ አልጸቀ፡ ወበጽሐ፡
 ጊዜሁ ። እስመ፡ ናሁ፡ ተደለወ፡ ከመ፡ የሀብ፡ ዐስበ፡ በዓለ፡ ገራህት፡ ለአ-
 15 ጸድያን፡ ሶበ፡ ይረክቡ፡ ክርዳድ፡ ዘከመ፡ ልህቀ፡ ምስለ፡ ስርናይ ። አእም-
 ርዎ፡ ከመ፡ ይፍልጥዎ፡ ለክርዳድ፡ ወያአስርዎ፡ በበከላስቲሁ፡ ወይገድ-
 ፍዎ፡ አፍአ፡ ምስለ፡ ኃሰሩ፡ ኃበ፡ እሳት፡ ዘኢይጠፍዕ ። ወለስርናይሂ፡
 ያስተጋብዕዎ፡ ኃበ፡ ቤት፡ ዘኢይረክቦ፡ ሐሩር፡ ወኢነፋስ፡ ወኢፃዔ፡ ወኢነ-
 ቀዝ ።

2 እስመ፡ ናሁ፡ ቀርቦ፡ ጊዜሁ፡ ዘያስተጋብእኒ፡ ውስተ፡ ዕደ፡ ጸላዕትየ ። ወበ
 20 እንተዝ፡ ተከዘት፡ ነፍስየ፡ እስከ፡ ለሞት ። ወኖልዊ፡ ለእመ፡ ደክመ፡ መኑ፡
 ይክል፡ ያንግፍ፡ በግዓ፡ እምኣፈ፡ ተኩላ ። ወለእመ፡ ደክመ፡ ሐረሳዊ፡
 ኢይትፈሬሣሕ፡ በፍሬሁ፡ ወኖላዊ፡ ኄር፡ ያስተጋብዕ፡ ወየዐቅብ፡ አባግ-
 ዒሁ ። ወንጉሥኒ፡ ለእመ፡ አውፅኦ፡ ለገብሩ፡ ወሰዓር፡ እምሲመቱ፡ መኑ፡
 ይክል፡ ያግብኦ [] ኃበ፡ ዘቀዳሚ፡ ንብረቱ ።

25 3 አማን፡ እብለክሙ፡ እስመ፡ ኢይትሐነጽ፡ ዕብን፡ ዲበ፡ ዕብን፡ ይትነ-
 ሠት፡ ያስተርኢ፡ | እስከ፡ መሠረታቲሃ ። ወካዕበ፡ እምድሃረ፡ ዝንቱ፡ fol. 105v
 ይሔድስዋ፡ ሕዝብየ፡ ሐዲሳን ። ወበውእቱ፡ ጊዜ፡ ያኃሥሥዋ፡ ሕዝብየ፡
 ወኩሉ፡ ዘይመጽእ፡ ወይበውዕ፡ ኃቤሃ፡ አኃድግ፡ ወእስሪ፡ ሎቱ፡ ኩሎ፡
 ጊጋዮ፡ ወኃጣውዒሁ ። ወከማሁ፡ ይእቲኒ፡ ተኃሥሥ፡ እምነ፡ ኩሉ፡
 30 ምድር፡ እምሥራቀ፡ ፀሐይ፡ እስከ፡ ምዕራብ፡ ወያኃሥሥዋ፡ ካዕበ፡ እለ፡
 ኢአምኑ፡ ብየ ።

4 ወሶበ፡ ይቤ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ዘንተ፡ ነገረ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ተመ-
 ይጠ፡ ኃበ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም፡ ወነጸረ፡ ኃቤሃ፡ ወገብኦ፡ ኃበ፡ ዘኮነ፡ ይትናገር ።

128 John 4:35; Rev. 14:15.

On that day, I will reveal the gate of light there, and the sinners will be separated from the righteous, and judgement will be issued on them, (each) according to his deed. On that day, there will be judgement and integrity, void of lies; there will not be violence | or partiality in it.

p. 164

And now, (know) my brothers, on that day, the chosen ones will be selected, and the pure ones will be separated.’

Chapter 35

1 (After) Our Lord Jesus Christ has spoken this commandment, he said to his disciples, ‘Rise up, let us go to Jerusalem so that the prophecy of the prophets may be fulfilled on us before Judas delivers me to the 10 Jews. Lift up your eyes and look at the field, how it is white and ready for harvest. Know that harvest has matured and its (gathering) time has come.¹²⁹ Behold, the owner of the field is ready to pay wages to the reapers.¹²⁹ When they find tares grown with the wheat, know that they will separate the tares and will bind them into sheaves, and leave them 15 outside with their chaff, at the unquenchable fire. But the wheat they will gather it into the house where neither heat nor wind nor worm nor moth will find it.

2 Behold, the time is near (in) which one delivers me into the hands of my enemies. Therefore, my soul is sorrowful even unto death.¹³⁰ If 20 the shepherd is weakened, who can rescue the sheep from the mouth of the wolf? If the farmer is weakened, he will not enjoy his fruit. A good shepherd gathers together and keeps his sheep.¹³¹ A king, too, if | he brings out his slave (to court) and demotes him from his office, who can reinstate him to his former position? 25

3 Truly I say to you that a stone will not be built over stone. (The fol. 105v temple) will be demolished | ; even its foundation will be exposed.¹³² Also after this, my new people will build it anew. At that time, my people will look for it. I will forgive and remit the transactions and sins of everyone who comes to it and enters into it. Similarly, it, too, will 30 look (for the faithful) in the whole earth, from the rising of the sun to (its) setting. Those who did not believe in me will also look for it.’

4 After Our Lord Jesus Christ had said these words, then he returned to Jerusalem. He looked at it and returned to what he spoke.

¹²⁹ Cf. Matt. 20: 1–16.

¹³⁰ Matt. 26:38.

¹³¹ An allusion to John 10:11.

¹³² Cf. Matt. 24:2.

5 ወይቤላ ፡ ዳግመ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ እንተ ፡ ትቀትሎሙ ፡ ለነቢያት ፡ ወትዌግ
ሮሙ ፡ ለሐዋርያት ፤ ሚመጠነ ፡ አስተጋብሎሙ ፡ ለደቂቅኪ ፡ በውስቴትኪ ፡
ከመ ፡ እንተ ፡ ታስተጋብእ ፡ ዶርሆ ፡ እጐሊሃ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ ክነፊሃ ፤ ወአንቲሰ ፡
ለዘ ፡ መጽአ ፡ ኃቤኪ ፡ መነንኪዮ ፡ ወጸላእኪዮ ፡ ወኢያፍቀርኪዮ ፡ እስመ ፡
5 ሰዶም ፡ ወገሞራ ፡ እምነጸሩ ፡ ዘተገብረ ፡ ተአምረ ፡ ወመንክረ ፡ በውስቴትኪ ፤
ሰብአ ፡ ዚአሃ ፡ እምነስሐ ፡ ወእምለብሱ ፡ ሠቀ ፡

6 ወባሕቱ ፡ ሰብአ ፡ ነነዌ ፡ ዘነበሩ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይትመክሁ ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡
ይትነሥኡ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ኩነኔ ፡ ወፍዳ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ እኩያን ፡ ወምኑ
ናን ፡ ይትፋትሕዋ ፡ ወያስተኃፍርዋ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ኮኑ ፡ ነስሐ ፡ ወተኃድገ ፡ ኃጢአ
10 ቶሙ ፡ በስብከተ ፡ ዮናስ ፡ ነቢይ ፡ ዘነበረ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ከርሠ ፡ አንበሪ ፡ ሰሉሠ ፡
መዋዕለ ፡ ወሠሉሠ ፡ ለያልየ ፡

7 ወተመይጠ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ወይቤላ ፡
ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ እንተ ፡ ትቀትሎሙ ፡ ለነቢያት ፡ አእምሪ ፡ ከመ ፡ አብያትኪ ፡
ይትመዘበር ፡¹¹² ወኢይትኃደግ ፡ ዕብን ፡ ዲበ ፡ ዕብን ፤ እምድጎረ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡
15 አነ ፡ እሬስየኪ ፡ ማኅደረ ፡ ለአድገ ፡ መረብ ፡ ዘገዳም ፡ በከመ ፡ አቅደምኩ ፡
ነጊረ ፡ ዘይከውን ፡ ፀአቶሙ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ገዳም ፡ እስመ ፡ እሙንቱ ፡ የኃ
ድሩ ፡ ውስቴትኪ ፡ ፲፻፵መተ ፤ ወለእመ ፡ ጸንዑ ፡ ሕዝብየ ፡ በውእቱ ፡ መዋ
ዕል ፡ ወኢተመይጡ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ትእዛዝየ ፡ እሬስየኪ ፡ ኦኢየሩሳሌም ፡ እምድጎረ ፡
ነበረ ፡ ውስቴትኪ ፡ አድገ ፡ መረብ ፡ ዘገዳም ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ መዋዕለ ፡ ዘነገርኩ
20 ክሙ ፡ ቀዲሙ ፡ ወእምድጎረ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ትከውኒ ፡ ማኅደረ ፡ ለአዕዋፍ ፡ ወለ
ጉን ¹¹³ እስመ ፡ አንቲ ፡ ረሰይኪ ፡ ይወድሱ ፡ በውስቴትኪ ፡ ዘኢኮነ ፡ ስምየ ፡
ብፁዓን ፡ እለ ፡ ይነብሩ ፡ በውእቱ ፡ መዋዕል ፡ በሃይማኖተ ¹¹⁴ ርትዕት ፡ በእ
ንቲአየ ፤

8 ወይ ፡ ለኪ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘይመጽእ ፡ ላዕሌኪ ፡ እምነ ፡ ኃይሉ fol. 106r
25 ወትእዛዙ ፡ ለኃሳዌ ፡ መሲሕ ፡ ዘአቅደምኩ ፡ ነጊረ ፡ እስከ ፡ አነብር ፡ ላዕሌኪ ፡
ኃይልየ ፡ ወበውስቴትኪ ፡ እከሥት ፡ ወአስተርኢ ፡ ኃይልየ ፡ ወስብሐትየ ፡ ለጸ
ላእትየ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣኤየ ፤

ወይለኪ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘይመጽእ ፡ ላዕሌኪ ፡ በደኃሪ ፡ መዋዕል ፡
እስመ ፡ ቀርባን ፡ ንጹሕ ፡ ይሠዓር ፡ ወይሴባሕ ፡ በውስቴትኪ ፡ ዘኢኮነ ፡
30 ስምየ ፤

9 ወካዕበ ፡ ይቤሎሙ ፡ እግዚእ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ለአርዳኢሁ ፡ ብኪዮ ¹¹⁵ ኦአኃ
ውየ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘይበጽሕ ፡ ላዕሌሃ ፡ በደኃሪ ፡ መዋዕል ፡

APPARATUS | 14 ¹¹² For "ራ" . 21 ¹¹³ For "ንን" . 22 ¹¹⁴ For "ት" . 31 ¹¹⁵ For "ከ" .

5 He said to it again, ‘Jerusalem, which kills the prophets and stones the messengers! How often have I gathered your children together in you as a hen gathers its chicks together under its wings!’¹³³ But you despised and hated whoever comes to you; you did not love him. For if Sodom and Gomorrah had seen the miracle and wonder worked in you, (their) people would have repented and wore sack-cloth.¹³⁴

6 But (even) the people on Nineveh, who were arrogant, will rise up on the day of judgement and retribution with these evil and despised
p. 166 people to condemn them | and put them to shame; for they repented 10
and their sins were forgiven by the preaching of Jonas who stayed
three days and three nights in the belly of a wale.’¹³⁵

7 Our Lord Jesus Christ returned to Jerusalem and said to it, ‘Jerusalem who kills the prophets, know that your houses will be plundered; not one stone will be left upon a stone.¹³⁶ After this, I will make you 15
an abode of wild donkeys of the desert. As I have said earlier, their coming out will be from inside the desert. For these (people) will reside in you¹³⁷ one thousand years. If my people remained stubborn in those days and did not return to my commandments, I will make you, O Jerusalem—after the wild donkeys of the desert (, about) which I 20
told you earlier, have resided in you a long time, after this—an abode of fowls and owls,¹³⁸ for you let that (people) praise in you what is not my name.

Blessed are those who live in those days in the Orthodox faith for my sake. 25

fol. 106r **8** Woe to you, Jerusalem, | for what will come upon you from the power and command of the Antichrist, (about) whom I spoke before, until I establish my power over you. On the day of my resurrection, I will reveal and show in you my power and my glory to my enemies.

p. 167 Woe to you, Jerusalem, | for what will come upon you at the latter 30
days, for the pure offering will cease and what is not my name will be glorified in you.’

9 Furthermore, the Lord Jesus said to his disciples: ‘Weep, O my brothers, for Jerusalem over what will come upon it at the latter days.

¹³³ Matt. 23:37; Luke 13:34.

¹³⁴ Cf. Matt. 11:21–23.

¹³⁵ Quotations from several places are put together; cf. Matt. 12:41; Luke 11:29–31.

¹³⁶ Matt. 23:37; 24:2.

¹³⁷ i.e. ‘in Jerusalem’.

¹³⁸ Or ‘water hen’.

እንስሳ ፡ ገዳም ፡ ወአራዊት ፡ ወአድገ ፡ መረብ ፡ የኃድሩ ፡ ውስቲታ ፡ ወይከይ
ድዋ ፡ ወይመልዕ ፡ ኣክይስት ፡ ወአፍዖት ፡ ወአቃርብት ፡ ማእከላ ።
ብክዩ ፡ ወላህው ፡ ኣኃውየ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ በከመ ፡ በከየ ፡ ወለሀው ፡
ኤርምያስ ፡ ነቢይ ፡ ብኪዩ ።¹¹⁶ ላዕለ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ወከማሁ ፡ ሀሎ ፡ ጽሑፍ ፡
5 ዘይበጽሐ ፡ ኃቤሃ ። እስመ ፡ እነ ፡ እከልእ ፡ መንግሥታ ፡ ወክህነታ ፡ ወትን
ቢታ ፡ እምሰብእ ፡ ዚአሃ ፡ ወአገብእ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ዕደ ፡ ፀራ ፡ ወጸላእታ ። ወካ
ዕበ ፡ ኣወርሳ ፡ ለሕዝብ ፡ ሐዲሳን ። እሊአየ ፡ ሰባኪያነ ፡ ክርስትና ፡

10 እስመ ፡ ይእቲ ፡ ትከውን ፡ ውስተ ፡ ዕደ ፡ ዝንቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ዘተነበየ ፡ ላዕሌ
ሆሙ ፡ {ላዕሌሆሙ} ፡ ዳዊት ፡ ነቢይ ፡ ወይቤ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ መቅ
10 ደስ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ሐዲስ ፡ ይትወለድ ፡ ወይሴብሐ ፡ በውስቲታ ፡ ወይባርኩ ፡
ለስሙ ። ወዝንቱ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ኅሩይ ፡ ወቡሩክ ፡ ዘኃረይክዎ ፡ እምቅ
ድመ ፡ ይትፈጠር ፡ ዓለም ፡ ወአዝማን ። ወሰብእኒ ፡ በውእቱ ፡ መዋዕል ፡
አልቦ ፡ ደዌ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ሥጋሆሙ ።

11 ወዕሥዕር ፡ ዝብሐተ ፡ አልህምት ፡ ወአባግዕ ፡ ወአጣሌ ፡ ወደመ ፡ ጽዩአ ።
15 ጸናጽለ ፡ ወማኅሌተ ፡ ወዕንዚራ ፡ ወመሰንቆ ፡ ወከበር ፡ ወተውኔተ ፡ ወነገረ ፡
ከንቶ ፡ እምኢየሩሳሌም ። ወሶቤሃ ፡ አነብር ፡ ውስተ ፡ መካነ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ሐዲ
ሳን ፡ ሕዝብ ፡ ክቡራን ፡ አባግዕ ፡ ፍቁራን ፡ ዘይሴብሐኒ ፡

12 ወትከውን ፡ መሥዋዕተ ፡ ቊርባኖሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ ሐሪጸ ፡ ስንዳሌ ፡ እስመ ፡
ውእቱ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ ወእራስዮ ፡ ለስርየተ ፡ ኃጢአት ፡ ወይከውን ፡ ለሕይወት ፡
20 ለእለ ፡ ይነሥኡ ፡ እምኔሁ ፡ በአሚን ። ወመካነ ፡ ደም ፡ ጽዩዕ ፡ ወሕመት ፡
ጸሊም ፡ ወዝቀ ፡ ወይን ፡ ብሉይ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ኣምሳለ ፡ ደምየ ፡ ንጹሕ ፡ ውእተ ፡
ጊዜ ፡ ይወድዩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ጽዋዕ ፡ ወይትመጠው ፡ ለስርየተ ፡ ኃጢአቶሙ ።
ወእዌልጥ ፡ ዌና ፡ ሰብሕ ፡ ጽይዕት ፡ በዕጣን ፡ እምነ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ዕፍረት ፡
ምዑዝ ፡ ወአምዕዝ ፡ ዌናሁ ፡ *ዘየዓርግ ፡ ዕጣነ ።¹¹⁷ ወትረ ፡ ቅድሚየ ። ወእ
25 ሬሲ ፡ ምክንያተ ፡ ለኅድገተ ፡ ኃጢአት ፡ ወአሰስል ፡ ጌጋዩ ፡ እምላዕሌሁ ።

fol. 106v

13 ስምዑኬ ፡ ኣኣኃውየ ፡ ወጠይቁ ፡ ዘአዘዝኩክሙ ፡ ወዘነገርኩክሙ ፡ ምግባ
ራተ ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም ፡ ሕጉልት ፡ ዘኃደገተኒ ፡ ወርሕቀት ፡ እምኔየ ። ወኃረየት ፡
እምኔየ ፡ ፈድፋደ ።

14 ኢታጽርዑ ፡ ኣኣኃውየ ፡ ሕገ ፡ ሐዲስ ፡ ወአይድዑ ፡ ስብከትየ ፡ መንፈሳ
30 ዊት ። ወኢይኩን ፡ ዝብሐተክሙ ፡ በሐጺን ፡ ዘይቀትል ፡ ነፍስ ።¹¹⁸ ወባሕቱ ፡
ይኩን ፡ በማይ ፡ ማኅየዊ ፡ ወማይሰ ፡ የሐይዎ ፡ ለኩሉ ፡ ሰብእ ፡ በርደተ ፡ መን

APPARATUS | 4 ¹¹⁶ For "ክ". 24 ¹¹⁷ For ዘየዓርግ ፡ ዕጣን ፡ /ዕጣን ፡ ዘየዓርግ ፡ or ዘያዓርግ ፡ ዕጣነ ፡ .
30 ¹¹⁸ For "ሰ" . The letters ሰ, ስ, ሳ are used interchangeably.

Wild beasts, wild animals, and wild donkeys will reside in it; and they will trample it. Serpents, vipers, scorpions will fill its centre.

Weep and lament for Jerusalem, my brothers, as the Prophet Jeremiah has wept and lamented.¹³⁹ Weep over Jerusalem; what will come upon it is to be found written so,¹⁴⁰ for I will deprive its people of its kingship, its priesthood, and its prophecy and deliver it into the hands of its adversaries and enemies. Furthermore, I will let it be inherited by new people, who are mine, preachers of Christianity.

10 For (Jerusalem) will be in the hands of this people about whom the Prophet David prophesied, saying about Jerusalem my sanctuary, **10** “A new people will be born and will praise (God) in it and bless his name.”¹⁴¹ This is the chosen and blessed people which I have chosen before the world and times were created. And at that time, people will
p. 168 have no ailments in | their bodies.

11 I will abolish from Jerusalem the slaughtering of cows, sheep, **15** and goats, and the stinking blood, and cymbals, chants, lyre, violin, drum, and performance, and words of vanity. At that time, I will settle, in place of the Jews, new honoured people, beloved sheep, who will praise me.

12 The sacrifice of their offering will be from wheat flour, for that is **20** my body; I will make it for the remission of sin. And it will be for life-giving for those who take it in faith. And (in) place of the stinking blood and charcoal, aged grape juice will represent my pure blood. At that time, they will put (it) in a cup and receive (it) for the remission of their sins. I will replace the stinking smell of the fat with incense **25**
fol. 106v (which is) | sweeter than any sweet perfume. And I will sweeten the smell of the one who regularly lifts up incense before me.¹⁴² I will make (it) a cause for the forgiveness of sin (to whoever lifts it), and it will remove his trespasses from him.

13 Listen, therefore, O my brothers, and understand what I have **30**
p. 169 commanded you and what I have told you (about) the deeds of | corrupt Jerusalem which forsook me and stayed far from me. It chose (others) than me a great deal.

14 O my brothers, do not neglect the new law. Make my spiritual teaching known. Let not your slaughtering be with iron which kills a **35** soul; rather, let it be with life-giving water. Water gives life to all

¹³⁹ The Book of Lamentation.

¹⁴⁰ The expression is taken from Matt. 2:5.

¹⁴¹ Ps. 78/79:1–3.

¹⁴² Or ‘I will sweeten the smell of the incense that is regularly lifted up before me’.

ፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ላዕሌሁ ፡ ወከማሁ ፡ ረሰይክዎ ፡ ለማይ ፡ ሕይወተ ፡ ለእለ ፡ የአ
ምኑ ፡ ብዩ ።።
አእምሩ ፡ ኦኦኃውዩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይጠመቅ ፡ እምነ ፡ ማይ ፡ ወእምነ ፡
መንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ኢይክል ፡ ከመ ፡ ይባዕ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ።።
5 ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይጠመቅ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ኢይወርስ ፡ ገነተ ፡
ትፍሥሕት ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ኢይሰመይ ፡ እኑክሙ ፡
ወኢይትራዓይ ፡ ምስሌክሙ ፡ ወኢይሰመዩ ፡ አበ ፡ ወውሉደ ፡ በከመ ፡ ሰመዩ ፡
ለክሙ ።።

10 15 ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይደልዎ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኩን ፡
ሊተ ፡ ወራሲ ፡¹¹⁹ ወኢፍቁረ ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይደልዎ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኅድር ፡
ውስተ ፡ ታዕካ ፡ ገነት ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይደልዎ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኩን ፡
15 ሊተ ፡ ገብረ ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይበርህ ፡ ገጹ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ትንሣ
ኤዩ ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይጸዋዕ ፡ ኃበ ፡ መርዓ ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይበቀጥዕ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኩን ፡
20 ወልደ ፡ እኅለ ፡ እመሕያው ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይትጎለቀኑ ፡¹²⁰ ምስለ ፡ አባግ
ዕዩ ።።

16 ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ እስመ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ይከውን ፡
ፀራ ፡ ወጸላኢሃ ፡ ለስብከትዩ ።።

25 ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ይከውን ፡ መክፈልቱ ፡ ምስለ ፡
ሰይጣን ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይክል ፡ ከመ ፡ ይርአይ ፡ ገጸ ፡
መላእክትዩ ።።¹²¹
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ይትዌረው ፡ ሥጋሁ ፡ ወነፍሱ ፡
30 ውስተ ፡ እሳተ ፡ ገሃነም ።።
ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ ወእመንፈስ ፡ ኢይሰመይ ፡ በግዓ ፡ በመንግ
ሥተ ፡ ሰማያት ።።
17 ኩሉ ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ ፡ እማይ ፡ | ወእመንፈስ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ጸላኤ ፡ ለስምዩ ፡ fol. 107r
ንጹሕ ፡ ወኢይክል ፡ ከመ ፡ ይነጽር ፡ ውስተ ፡ ገነተ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ።።

APPARATUS | 11 ¹¹⁹ Or "ሴ, not clear. 21 ¹²⁰ For "ኧ". 28 ¹²¹ For መለኮትዩ ፣, according to the Arabic.

people by the descent of the Holy Spirit on them. So, I have made water life for those who believe in me.

Know, O my brothers, that anyone who is not baptized with water and the Holy Spirit will not be able to enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.¹⁴³ 5

Everyone who is not baptized with water and with the Holy Spirit will not inherit the Garden of Joy.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Holy Spirit will not be called your brother, and will not be equal to you. (Such people) will not be called father and son either, even as he (so) calls you. 10

15 Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not deserve to be my heir or a beloved one.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not deserve to reside in the hall of the Garden.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not deserve to be my slave. 15

The face of everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not shine on the day of my resurrection.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not be invited to the wedding (feast). 20

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not attain being Son of Man.¹⁴⁴

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not be counted with my sheep.

p. 170 **16** Everyone who is not born | of water and the Spirit will, indeed, 25 be an adversary and enemy of my preaching.

The fate of everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be with Satan.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not be able to see the face of my angels.¹⁴⁵ 30

The body and soul of everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be cast into the fire of hell.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will not be called a sheep in the Kingdom of Heaven.

fol. 107r **17** Everyone who is not born of water | and the Spirit will be a hater 35 of my pure name, and he will not be able to look into the Garden of Joy.

¹⁴³ John 3:5.

¹⁴⁴ Arabic, *bašar*, not *ibn al-bašar*.

¹⁴⁵ Arabic, ‘my face in my divinity’.

- ኩሉ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ፡ እማይ፡ ወእመንፈስ፡ ይከውን፡ ውስተ፡ ኩነኔ፡ ዘለዓ
ለም ።፤
- ኩሉ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ፡ እማይ፡ ወእመንፈስ፡ ይከውን፡ ውስተ፡ ጽልመት፡
ንብረቱ ።፤
- 5 ኩሉ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ፡ እማይ፡ ወእመንፈስ፡ ይከውን፡ ሲሳየ፡ ለእዪ፡ ዘኢ
ይመውት ።፤
- ኩሉ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ፡ እማይ፡ ወእመንፈስ፡ ይከውን፡ ስዱደ፡ እምጸጋየ ።፤
- ኩሉ፡ ዘኢይትወለድ፡ እማይ፡ ወእመንፈስ፡ በፀጋምየ፡ ይቀውም፡ ይፀደፍ፡
ወይድፍቅ፡ በገጹ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኣል ።፤
- 10 18 አእምሩ፡ ኣኣኃውየ፡ ወከብካበ፡ መርዓየ፡ ይነብር፡ ፲፻ዓመተ፡ እምነ፡
መዋዕል ።፤ እስመ፡ ከማሁ፡ ይከውን፡ በውእተ፡¹²² ጊዜ፡ ፍሥሐ፡ ወኃሄት፡
ወይትሓነጸ፡ ኣብያተ፡ ክርስቲያናት፡ እምሥራቀ፡ ፀሐይ፡ እስከ፡ ምዕራ-
ቢሃ ።፤ ወትከውን፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ቅድስት፡ ኣሐቲ፡ ጉባዔ፡ እንተ፡
ላዕለ፡ ኩሉ፡ እንተ፡ ሐዋርያት ።፤ ጽሪት፡ ወኅሪት፡ ለሰብሐትየ፡ ምስለ፡
- 15 ኣብ፡ ወመንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ጳራቅሊጦስ ።፤ ።
ወይከውን፡ መዋዕሊሁ፡ ለጸላኢ፡ በትረ፡ መዓት፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ፡ ዜናሁ፡
ቀዲሙ፡ ወይከውን፡ ፀዓቱ፡ እምውስተ፡ ገዳም ።፤ ወይከውን፡ በመዋዕ
ሊሁ፡¹²³ ገዳጠ፡ ፫ዓመተ፡ ወጂአውራኃ፡ እስመ፡ ኣሕፀርኩ፡ ውእቱ፡¹²⁴ መዋ
ዕለ፡ በእንተ፡ ኅሩያንየ፡ ወለእመ፡ [ኢያሕፀርክዎ፡] ኢይተርፍ፡ ኣሐዱ፡
- 20 ዘይአምን፡ በስምየ ።፤ በዲበ፡ ምድር፡ ወኢይትመየጥ፡ እምነ፡ ሕዝብየ፡ ወኢ
ይኔስሐ፡ እምኃጣውዲሆሙ፡ ኣበዝሳ፡ መዋዕሊሆሙ፡ ለእሉ፡ ተንባላት፡
ከመ፡ ይኩንንዎሙ ።፤
- 19 ለብውኬ፡ እምነ፡ ደቂቀ፡ ቁዳር፡ ጸሊማን፡ ኢይኒጡክሙ፡ እስመ፡
እሙንቱ፡ ኃያጥያን፡ ብዙኃ፡ እምነ፡ ሰብእ፡ በሕልያን፡ ወርቅ፡ ወብሩር፡
- 25 ኣእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ በጊዜ፡ ይከውን፡ መከራ፡ በከመ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ ካዕበ፡
ይትፈተን፡ ወርቅ፡ በእሳት፡ ወይከውን፡ ንጹሐ፡ እምርስሐት ።፤
ኢታፍቅሩ፡ ብዕላ፡ ለዓለም፡ ወኢትጹሩ፡ ውስተ፡ ቊናማቲክሙ፡¹²⁵ ወርቀ፡
ወኢብሩረ፡ ወኢብርተ፡ ወኢጽፍነተ፡ ወኢትንሥኡ፡ ውስተ፡ ዕደዊክሙ፡
በትረ፡ ወኢክልኤተ፡ ኣልባስ ።፤ ወኢትግበሩ፡ ውስተ፡ እገሪክሙ፡ ኣሣዕነ፡
- 30 ኣሐቲ፡ ልብስ፡ ይበቀኅክሙ፡ ዘትከድኑ፡ ሥጋክሙ፡
- 20 ወኢትትወክልዎሙ፡ ለጸዋርያነ፡ ኣስይፍት፡ እስመ፡ ኣነ፡ ኢይሠምር፡
ብክሙ ።፤ ኣኮ፡ ዘእስሕብ፡ ኃቤክሙ፡ ሕዝበ፡ በኃይል፡ ኣላ፡ በተአምራት፡

APPARATUS | 11 ¹²² For ”ቱ ፡. 18 ¹²³ For መ”. | ¹²⁴ For ”ተ ፡. 27 ¹²⁵ For ቅናውቲክሙ ፡.

¹⁴⁶ These warning sentences are modelled after John 3:5.
¹⁴⁷ The feast is also known as ምሳሕ፡ በደብረ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ or *Banquet at Mount Sion*; see ‘Däbrä
Səyon’, *EAE*, II (2005), 43b–44a (Getatchew Haile).

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be under eternal damnation.

The abode of everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be darkness.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be food of the worm that will not die.

Everyone who is not born of water and the Spirit will be banished from my grace.

p. 171 Everyone who is not born of water | and the Spirit will stand on my left, be hurled down the precipice and will fall in Hades on his face.¹⁴⁶ 10

18 Know, O my brothers, the feast of my wedding will last a thousand years period,¹⁴⁷ for at that time will thus be happiness and joy. Churches will be built from the rising of the sun to its setting. And the Church will be holy, one, catholic, apostolic, pure, and chosen for my praise with the Father and the Holy Spirit, Paraclete. 15

The period of the enemy will be a rod of rage¹⁴⁸ whose news I have told you earlier. His appearance will be from the desert. During his time there will be famine for three years and seven months. I have shortened the time for the sake of my chosen ones.¹⁴⁹ If [I had not shortened it.] not one who believes in my name would ever be left on 20 earth. (But) there are (some) from my people (who) will not return nor repent of their sins. (Therefore,) I will prolong the time of these Muslims to rule over them.

p. 172 **19** Beware of the black children of Qedar¹⁵⁰ lest they lure you, for they are seducers of many | of the people with bribery, (in) gold and 25 silver. Know that temptation will take place in due time as I have told you. Furthermore, gold is tried with fire and becomes clean of its dirt.

Do not love the world's wealth. And do not carry in your belts either gold or silver or copper (pieces) or bag. Also, do not carry a staff in your hands or two tunics; and do not put on sandals on your 30 feet.¹⁵¹ One tunic (with) which you may cover your body suffices you.¹⁵²

20 Do not depend on sword-carriers, for I will not be pleased with you. I do not draw people to you by force but by miracles and wonders

¹⁴⁸ Isa. 10:5.

¹⁴⁹ Matt. 24:22.

¹⁵⁰ 'Decendants of Ismael' (Gen. 25:14), Arabs.

¹⁵¹ Matt. 10:11.

¹⁵² Cf. Matt. 10:10; Mark 6:8; Luke 9:3.

ወመንክራት ፡ ዘገበርኩ ፡ ማእከሉ ክሰሙ ። ወአንትሙኒ ፡ ግበሩ ፡ ከማሁ ፡ አጋ fol. 107v
 ንንትኒ ፡ ይሰምዑ ፡ ቃለክሙ ፡ ወይትኤዘዙ ፡ ለክሙ ፡ ወይጎዎ ፡ እምቅድመ ፡
 ገጽክሙ ፡ ወበዕደዊክሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ለምጽ ፡ ይነጽሑ ፡ ወበጸሎትክሙ ፡ ሙታኅ ፡
 አንሥኡ ። እስመ ፡ ሰማይ ፡ ትሰምዕ ፡ ለአስተብቀኦታክሙ ፡ ወምድርኒ ፡
 5 ትትኤዘዘ ፡ ለክሙ ። ወመላእክትኒ ፡ ይምዕዱክሙ ፡ ወነገሥትኒ ፡ ይፈርሁ ፡
 እምኔክሙ ፡
 21 ሐሩ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ማዕምራን ፡ ወጠቢባን ፡ ወነገሥት ፡ ኃበ ፡ ሰብአ ፡
 ዝንቱ ፡ ዓለም ፡ ወሚጥምሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይእመኑ ፡ ብዩ ፡ ወአንሰ ፡ እሄሉ ፡ ምስሌ
 ክሙ ። ወኢትፍርሁ ፡ እምነገሥት ፡ ወዕበዩ ፡ ለትእዘዘሙ ፡ ወስብኩ ፡
 10 ውስተ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ አጽናፈ ፡ ምድር ፡ እንዘ ፡ ትብሉ ፡ ቀርበት ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ሰማ
 ያት ። ወኢትጎዎዩ ፡ እምነ ፡ ዘዩኃሥሠክሙ ፡ ወለእመ ፡ ይቤሉክሙ ፡
 ሕዝብ ፡ አብዳን ። ተፈሥሑ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ኢይትከላእ ፡ እምኔክሙ ፡ ወአን
 ሕል ፡ በቅድሜክሙ ፡ ማዕዘንተ ፡ መሠረታቲሆሙ ፡ ለጠቢባን ፡ ወለማዕም
 15 ራን ፡ በቅድመ ፡ ገጽክሙ ። ወእሰይመክሙ ፡ ሊቃውንተ ፡ ለጠቢባን ፡ እስከ ፡
 22 አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ አልቦ ፡ ዘይትሐጎል ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ዘተጠምቀ ፡ በስምዩ ፡ ዘእን
 በለ ፡ ወልደ ፡ ሐጎል ፡ ወአልቦ ፡ ዘይክህደኒ ፡ እምነ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ዘእንበለ ፡
 ወልደ ፡ አመፃ ፡ ወዝሙ [ት ፡] በእንተ ፡ ዘተደመረ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡ ሰይጣን ።
 ባዑ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ወኢትፍርሁ ፡ እምነ ፡ ኃይሎሙ ፡
 20 23 ወተዓገሱ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ምንዳቤ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ ነገርኩክሙ ፡ ብዩነ ። ወሕዝ
 ብኒ ፡ ኢያዓቢዩክሙ ፡ ¹²⁶ ወመላእክትኒ ፡ ይወርዱ ፡ እምሰማይ ፡ ወይትረዓዩ ፡
 በእንተ ፡ ክብርክሙ [ት ፡] ወይከውን ፡ ረድኤተ ፡ ለክሙ ። አእምሩ ፡ እምከመ ፡
 አዘዝክሙ ፡ ሰማይ ፡ ታወርድ ፡ ዝናመ ። ወካዕበ ፡ ሰበ ፡ ትኤዝዝዋ ፡ ለም
 25 ድር ፡ ታወርዕ ፡ ወታወዕዕ ፡ ሣዕረ ፡ ወታብቀኦል ፡ ፍረያተ ። ወማዩ ፡ ባሕርኒ ፡
 ወአፍላግ ፡ ኩሉ ፡ ዘይትኤዘዘ ፡ ለክሙ ። ወትከይዱ ፡ ዲቢሃ ፡ ወተኃልፉ ፡ በእ
 ገሪክሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዩብስ ፡ ወኢትለክፈክሙ ፡ ወለክሙ ፡ ስልጣን ፡ ከመ ፡ ትዪ
 ዓኑ ፡ ላዕለ ፡ ደመናት ፡ ከመ ፡ ኢትድክሙ ፡ በሓዊረ ፡ ፍኖት ፡ ርሕቅት ፡
 እንዘ ፡ ተኃሥሥዎሙ ፡ ለነገሥት ፡ ወለመኳንንት ፡ ወለመላፍንት ፡ ወኢይዩ
 ብስ ፡ እገሪክሙ ።
 30 24 አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ምድር ፡ ትጠወም ፡ ለክሙ ፡ ወኩሎሙ ፡ አጋንንት ፡
 ይጎይ [ዩ ፡] | እምኔክሙ ፡ ወጣያታት ፡ ይወድቁ ፡ በቅድሜክሙ ። ወአድ fol. 108r
 ባር ፡ ነውኃት ፡ ይደኑ ፡ ታሕተ ፡ መክዩደ ፡ እገሪክሙ ። በፍርሀት ፡ ወነገሥት ፡
 ይሰማዱ ፡ ለክሙ ፡ ወመኳንንት ፡ ያፈቅሩክሙ ። ወጠቢባን ፡ ያነክሩ ፡ ጥበብ
 ክሙ ፡ ወይደመሙ ፡ እምተአምራቲክሙ ። ወማእምራን ፡ ያደምዑ ፡ ቃለ ፡

APPARATUS | 21 ¹²⁶ For "ብ".

¹⁵³ Cf. Acts 2:22.

¹⁵⁴ Mark 16:17.

¹⁵⁵ Matt. 10:8.

fol. 107v which I have been working in your | midst.¹⁵³ You, too, do likewise. Demons included will listen to your words and will obey you; they will flee from your face.¹⁵⁴ Those with leprosy will be cleansed in your hands. And raise the dead with your prayers;¹⁵⁵ for heaven will hear your intercession; and the earth, too, will obey you. The angels will counsel you; and kings will fear you.

p. 173 **21** Go to every erudite, sage, and kings—to the people of this world—and convert them to | believing in me. I will be with you. Fear not kings. Disobey their orders. Preach in all ends of the earth, saying, “The Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.”¹⁵⁶ Do not flee from those who search for you. Rejoice if people say to you, “You are fools”, for I will not be barred from you. I will demolish, in front of you, the cornerstone of the foundations of the sage and the erudite.¹⁵⁷ I will appoint you chiefs of the sage until your foolishness rebukes the wisdom of the wise. 15

22 Know that no one who is baptized in my name will be lost, except the Son of Perdition.¹⁵⁸ And no one of the Christians will deny me except the sons of violence and fornication, because Satan has been united with them. Enter where kings are; do not fear their power.

23 Endure in tribulation, for I have warned you about a decided- upon matter. People will not disobey you; and the angels will come down from heaven and appear because of your honour. They will be help for you. Know that heaven will bring down rain as soon as you command. Also, when you command the earth, it will bring forth and grow grass, and bear fruits. All waters of the seas and the rivers, too, are to obey you. You will walk on them and pass (them) on foot¹⁵⁹ like p. 174 on the land; and they will not touch you. | You have the authority to ride the clouds lest you be weary from taking long journeys while searching for kings, rulers, and princes, and your feet be worn.

fol. 108r **24** Know that the earth will be rolled up for you. And every demon will flee | from you. Idols will fall before you. And high mountains will fall down under your footstools in fear. Kings will prostrate themselves to the ground before you. Rulers will love you.¹⁶⁰ The wise will admire your wisdom and be stunned by your miracles. The erudite will heed the words of your statements. And their hearts will be perturbed 35

¹⁵⁶ Matt. 10:7.

¹⁵⁷ Isa. 29:14; 1 Cor. 1:19.

¹⁵⁸ John 17:12.

¹⁵⁹ Lit. ‘on your feet’.

¹⁶⁰ Probably, ‘will fear you’.

ነገርክሙ ፡ ወልቦሙ ፡ ይትሀወክ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ነጻሩ ፡ ኃቤክሙ ፡ ወትምህርቶሙ ፡
 ይትነሠት ፡ እምከመ ፡ ርእዩ ፡ ኪያክሙ ፡ ውኅልቄ ፡ ከዋክብት ፡ ወማርያን ፡
 ይሠዓር ፡ በመንክራቲክሙ ፡ ወመሠርያን ፡ ይዘረው ፡ እምነ ፡ ኃይልክሙ ፡ #
 25 ለክሙ ፡ ወሀብኩ ፡ ክህነተ ፡ ወትንቢተ ፡ ከመ ፡ ተሀቡ ፡ ለኩሉ ፡ ዘፈቀድ
 5 ክሙ ፡ እምነ ፡ አሕዛብ ፡ ብፁዓት ፡ አዕይንቲክሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ርእያ ፡ ኪያየ ፡ ወፅ
 ዘኒክሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ሰምዓ ፡ ቃልየ ፡ ወዕደዊክሙ ፡ እለ ፡ ገሠሣ ፡ ሥጋየ ፡ እስመ ፡
 ብዙኃን ፡ ነቢያት ፡ ወጻድቃን ፡ ፈተው ፡ ይርእዩ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ ዘትሬእዩ ፡
 ወኢርእዩ ፡ ወዘሰማዕክሙ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ ወኢሰምዑ ፡ #
 እስመ ፡ ናሁ ፡ አነ ፡ ነገርኩክሙ ፡ ቀዲሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ ደኃርት ፡ ይከውኑ ፡
 10 ቅድመ ፡ ወቀደምትኒ ፡ ይገብኡ ፡ ድኅረ ፡ #

26 ዕቀቡ ፡ ኩሎ ፡ ትእዛዝየ ፡ ወኢትክሥቲ ፡ ለአሐዱሂ ፡ እስከ ፡ አዓርግ ፡
 ሰማየ ፡ ወጸሐፍክዋ ፡¹²⁷ ውስተ ፡ ዕዝነ ፡ ልብክሙ ፡ ወረስይዋ ፡ [...] ዕቀቡ ፡
 ምሥጢራተ ፡ ዘአዕቀብኩክሙ ፡ ኪያሃ ፡ ኢትግድፉ ፡ ወኢትሕድጉ ፡ አሐደ ፡
 እምኔሃ ፡

15 ወአእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ ናሁ ፡ አነ ፡ አኃድገክሙ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ብዙኅ ፡ ኃዘን ፡ #
 27 ወካዕበ ፡ ሕዳጠ ፡ ተኃሥሡኒ ፡ ወኢትረክቡኒ ፡ ወኃበ ፡ አነ ፡ አሐውር ፡ አን
 ትሙ ፡ ኢትክሉ ፡ መጺአ ፡ ኃቤየ ፡ ወሶቤሃ ፡ ሐዘኑ ፡ አርድእት ፡ በእንተ ፡
 ዝንቲ ፡ ቃል ፡ ወይቤሉ ፡ በበይናቲሆሙ ፡ አይቲኑ ፡ የሐውር ፡ ኃበ ፡ መካን ፡
 ዘኢንክል ፡ ረኪቦቶ ፡ ወኢርእዮቶ ፡ ወኮነ ፡ ማዕከሌሆሙ ፡ ኑፋቄ ፡ በእንተ ፡
 20 ዝንቲ ፡ ነገር ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ ወአእመረ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ዘተበ
 ሐሉ ፡¹²⁸ አርድእት ፡ በበይናቲሆሙ ፡ ወይቤሎሙ ፡ አኃውየ ፡ ኢትናፍቄ ፡
 በበይናቲክሙ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ ፡ እስመ ፡ አነ ፡ እከሥት ፡ ለክሙ ፡
 እምነ ፡ ምግባራት ፡ ዘትክል ፡ አልባቢክሙ ፡ ጸዊሮቶ ፡ አእምሩ ፡ እስመ ፡ መን
 ፈስ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ይፈቅድ ፡ ወሥጋ ፡ ይደክም ፡ እስመ ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ ይደሉ ፡ እንግር
 25 ክሙ ፡ ወባሕቲ ፡ አእምሩ ፡ ከመ ፡ አንትሙ ፡ ኢትክሉ ፡ ጸዊሮቶ ፡ ወባሕቲ ፡
 አሕጸርኩ ፡ እምኔክሙ ፡ ወዕቀቡ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ ፡ ወዘወሀብኩክሙ ፡ #

28 ወይቤልዎ ፡ አርዳኢሁ ፡ አእግዚእነ ፡ ወአምላክነ ፡ ወመድኃኒነ ፡ ንግረነ ፡
 ማዕዘ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ሕልቀት ፡¹²⁹ | ዓለም ፡ ዘአይዳዕከነ ፡ ቀዳሚ ፡ ወእፎ ይከ fol. 108v
 ውን ፡ ምጽአትክ ፡ ለኩንኖ ፡ ወበዓይ ፡ ዕለት ፡ ይከውን ፡ አጠይቀነ ፡ ውእተ ፡
 30 ዕለተ ፡ ከመ ፡ ንኩን ፡ ድልዋነ ፡ እፎ ፡ ይከውን ፡ ምጽአትክ ፡ በከመ ፡ ኮነ ፡
 ቀዳሚ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ንጽሕት ፡ አኮነ ፡ ይከውን ፡ መዓልተ ፡ አው ፡

APPARATUS | 12 ¹²⁷ For "ፍዋ" ? 21 ¹²⁸ For "ባ". 28 ¹²⁹ For "ተ" .

¹⁶¹ Lit. 'sorcerer'.

when they look at you, and their teaching will be demolished as soon as they see you. Astronomy and sorcery¹⁶¹ will be abolished by your wonders. And spell-casters will be scattered by your power.

25 I have given you priesthood and prophecy so that you (too) may give (them) to every one of the people you want. Blessed are your eyes which saw me, your ears which heard my words, and your hands which touched my body. For many prophets and righteous men had longed to see what you see but did not see, and (to hear) what you heard but did not hear.¹⁶²

p. 175 Behold, I have told you | in advance, for the last will be first and the 10 first will be last.¹⁶³

26 Keep all my commandments, and do not reveal (them) to any one until I ascend to heaven. I have written it¹⁶⁴ in your hearts' ears; keep the secrets which I entrusted to you. Do not omit or forsake anything from it. 15

Know that, behold, I will leave you in much sorrow.

27 Furthermore, you will search for me a little while longer, but you will not find me; and to where I go, you cannot come with me.¹⁶⁵ At that time, the disciples grieved because of this word. They said to each another, 'To which place, where we cannot find him or see him, will he 20 go?' There was much discord among them over this matter. Our Lord Jesus Christ knew what the disciples said to each other. He said to them, 'O my brothers, do not have discord among yourselves over what I have told you, for I will reveal to you (but) only things which your heart can bear. Know that where the spirit is willing the flesh is 25 weak,¹⁶⁶ for I ought to tell | you much, but know that you cannot bear it. Therefore, I have shortened it for you. Keep this which I have told you and entrusted to you.'

28 His disciples said to him, 'O Our Lord, Our God, and Our Sa-
fol. 108v viour, tell us when will be the end of | the world, which (will happen) 30 as you have informed us earlier? How will your coming to judge be? And on which day will it take place?' Inform us the day so we may be ready. How will your coming be? Will your coming be as it happened before (when you came) to pure Mary?¹⁶⁷ Will it be by day or by

¹⁶² Cf. Matt. 13:16–17; Luke 10:23–24.

¹⁶³ Matt. 20:16.

¹⁶⁴ Or 'write it'.

¹⁶⁵ John 7:33–36.

¹⁶⁶ Cf. Mark 14:38.

¹⁶⁷ Mary was announced beforehand of his coming to her.

ሌሊተ፡ አኮነ፡¹³⁰ ይወዳር፡ ወየኃልፍ፡ ሰማይ፡ ወምድር፡ እምቅድመ፡ ምጽአትከ፡፤

29 ወይቤሎሙ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ናሁ፡ ከሠትኩ፡ ለክሙ፡ ውእተ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ ወአጠየቁክሙ፡ ትእምርታተ፡ ዘይከውን፡ በይእቲ፡ 5 ጊዜ፡ ኃበ፡ ነገሥት፡ ወኃበ፡ ካልአኒሆሙ፡፤ ወኢትርስዑ፡ ቃለ፡ ትምህር ትየ፡ ወተግሣጽየ፡ ስምዑ፡ ወአእምሩ፡ ዘከመ፡ ፈጠርኩ፡ ሰማየ፡ ወምድረ፡ ወኩሎ፡ ፍጥረታተ፡ በጌዕለት፡ ወከማሁ፡ ይከውን፡ ሕልቀተ፡ ዓለም፡ በ፪፻፩ ዓመት፡ እምነ፡ ዓለም፡ ወይከውን፡ ሕልቀተ፡ ዓለም፡ በዕለተ፡ ቀዳሚ፡ እምነ፡ መዋዕል፡ ወባቲ፡ ፈጠርኩ፡ ዐለመ፡ ወባተ፡¹³¹ ይከውን፡ ሕልቀታ፡ ወኅል 10 ፈታ፡፤ ወባቲ፡ እትነሣእ፡ እምነ፡ መቃብር፡ ወአነሥአሙ፡ ለኩሎ፡ ፍጥረተ፡ እምነ፡ ምውታን፡

አሜሃ፡ በይዕቲ፡ ዕለት፡ ወበይእቲ፡ ሰዓት፡ ይትነሥኡ፡ ኩሎ፡ ሙታን፡ ከመ፡ ብእሲ፡ ዘይነቅሕ፡ እምነ፡ ንዋሙ፡ ከማሁ፡ ይነቅሑ፡ ሙታን፡ እመቃ ብሪሆሙ፡

15 ወሶቤሃ፡ እኤዝዞ፡ ለገብርኤል፡ ሊቀ፡ ሠራዊት፡ ከመ፡ ይንፋህ፡ ቀርነ፡ ወሚካኤል፡ ካዕበ፡ ይነፍህ፡ ቀርነ፡ በውስተ፡ ሰረገላ፡፤

30 አእምሩ፡ በውእቱ፡ መዋዕል፡ አንትሙ፡ ውስቴታ፡ ይትፈጸም፡¹³² ትንቢተ፡ ነቢያት፡፤

በውእቱ፡ መዋዕል፡ ይትፈጸም፡¹³³ ቀለ፡¹³⁴ ሰባኪያን፡፤

20 በውእቱ፡ መዋዕል፡ ይትፈጸም፡¹³⁵ ሕገ፡ ኦሪት፡፤

አእምሩ፡ እምነ፡ ዝንቱ፡ ጊዜ፡ እስከ፡ ጊዜ፡ ምጽአትየ፡ ለኩንኖ፡ ፪፻፲ ወ፳ሱ ባዲያት፡¹³⁶ ወኑኃ፡ ዝንቱ፡ ዓለም፡ ፻፵ ወ፫ሱ ባዔ፡ ዐበያ[ን፡]

ኦኦኃውየ፡ ብፁዕ፡ ዘየኃድግ፡ ለእኑሁ፡ ምዕመን፡ አበሳ፡ ሰብእ፡ በበስብዕ፡ ወአነሂ፡ ኦኃድግ፡ ኩሎ፡ ኃጣውዲሁ፡፤

25 31 እስመ፡ ናሁ፡ አነ፡ ነገርኩክሙ፡ ወከሠትኩ፡ ለክሙ፡ ወአርአይኩክሙ፡ ዘኢርእዩ፡ መላእክት፡ ንጹሐን፡፤ ወዕቀቡ፡ ዘነገርኩክሙ፡ ወአእምሩ፡ እስመ፡ በዕለተ፡ ዕሁድ፡ ዘባቲ፡ እትነሣእ፡ እምነ፡ መቃብር፡ ወኢያውዕየ፡ እሳት፡ ለሰብእ፡ ወኢይበልዖ፡ ዕዔ፡ ለሥጋሁ፡ ለኩሎ፡ ዘሀሎ፡ ውስተ፡ መቃብር፡፤

30 ኦኦኃውየ፡ ብፁዕ፡ ዘያበውያሙ፡ ለካህናተየ፡¹³⁷ ውስተ፡ ቤቱ፡ በዕለተ፡ ትንሣኤየ፡ እስመ፡ ውእቱ፡ ይከውን፡ ለቅድስትየ፡ ኃበ፡ ዘኢይበሊ፡ ወኢይማሰን፡ እስመ፡ አነ፡ ኢፈጠርኩ፡ ዕለተ፡ ዘየዐቢ፡ እምበለተ፡ ዕሁድ፡፤

fol. 109r

APPARATUS | 1 ¹³⁰ For "ኑ" ፣ 9 ¹³¹ For "ቲ" ፣ 17 ¹³² For "ፌ" ፣ 19 ¹³³ For "ፌ" ፣ | 134 For "ቃ" ፣ 20 ¹³⁵ For "ፌ" ፣ 22 ¹³⁶ For "ዔ" ፣ 30 ¹³⁷ For "ት" ።

¹⁶⁸ 7000 - 5500 = 1500 EC = 1500 + 7/8 = 1507/1508 CE.

night? Will heaven and earth be abolished and pass before your coming?’

29 Our Lord Jesus Christ said to them, ‘Behold, I have revealed that to you. I have told you and have explained to you the signs which will take place at that time concerning kings and others. Do not forget the words of my teaching and my admonition. Hear and know that as I created heaven and earth and all creatures in seven days, so will be the end of the world, in seven thousand years from (the creation) of the world.¹⁶⁸ The end of the world will be on the first day of time.¹⁶⁹ I created the world on it; and its end and its passing away will be on it. I **10**
p. 177 will rise on it from the grave, | and resurrect all creatures from death.¹⁷⁰

At that time, on that day and that hour, all the dead will rise. As a man who wakes out of his sleeping,¹⁷¹ so will the dead wake out of their graves. **15**

At that time, I will command the Archangel Gabriel to blow the horn. Then Michael will blow the horn from a chariot.

30 Know, at this time, in which you are, the prophecy of the prophets will be fulfilled.

At this time, the words of the preachers will be fulfilled. **20**

At this time, the law of the Torah will be fulfilled.

Know that from this time to the time of my coming to judge will be 215 weeks.¹⁷² The (time) span of this world is 143 great weeks.¹⁷³

O my brothers, blessed is he who forgives the transgression of his brother, the faithful one, seven times seventy.¹⁷⁴ I, too, will forgive all **25**
his sins.

31 Now, behold, I have told you and revealed to you, and I have showed you what the pure angels have not seen. Keep what I have told you; and know that on Sunday, on which I will rise from the grave, fire (of hell) will not burn the body, and the worm will not eat the flesh of **30**
anyone who is in the grave.

p. 178 O my brothers, blessed | is he who lets my priests into his house on the day of my resurrection, for he will belong to my holy (things)¹⁷⁵

¹⁶⁹ ‘Sunday’.

¹⁷⁰ Lit. ‘the dead ones’.

¹⁷¹ Ps. 72/73:20; 77/78:65.

¹⁷² $215 \times 7 = 1505$ CE?

¹⁷³ 143×49 (Jubilee cycle) = 7007 = 1507 CE?

¹⁷⁴ Matt. 18:22.

¹⁷⁵ i.e. ‘Sunday’.

ዘንተ ፡ ተናገሮሙ ፡ እግዚእን ፡ ለአርዳኢሁ ፡ ሎቲ ፡ ስብሐት ፡ እስከ ፡ ለዓ
 ለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ። አሜን ። ወአሜን ። ለይኩን ። ለይኩን ። ለይኩን ።
 ስብሐት ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡ ወላዕሌን ፡ ይኩን ፡ ምሕረቱ ፡ እምይእዜ ፡ ወእስከ ፡
 ለዓለም ፡ አሜን ። ።
 5 ተፈጸመ ፡ ትአዛዝ ፡ ዘነገሮሙ ፡ እግዚእን ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ። ለአርዳኢሁ ፡
 ንጹሐን ፡ በሀገረ ፡ ኢያሪኮ ፡ ተተርጎመ ፡ እምልሳነ ፡ ዐረቢ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ግዕዝ ፡
 ሎቲ ፡ ስብሐት ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ። ።
 ኦእግዚእ ፡ መሀሮ ፡ ወተሠላሎ ፡ ለገብርክ ፡ ገብረ ፡ መርዓዊ ፡ ለዘአጽሐፊ ፡
 ዘንተ ፡ መጽሐፈ ፡ ተዘኪሮ ፡ ተዋሥኦተ ፡ እግዚእን ፡ ምስለ ፡ አርዳኢሁ ፡ ቡሩ
 10 ካን ። ጸሐፍ ፡ [ስ]ሙ ፡¹³⁸ ኃበ ፡ አምደ ፡ ብርሃን ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ።
 አሜን ። ወአሜን ።

fol. 109r where nothing will be old or corrupt, for I did not create a day greater than | Sunday.¹⁷⁶

Our Lord told this to his disciples, to whom be glory forever (and) ever. Amen, amen, and amen. Let it be, let it be, let it be. Glory be to God and may his mercy be with us from now to eternity. Amen. 5

The commandment which Our Lord Jesus Christ has told to his pure disciples at the city of Jericho ended. It is translated from the Arabic language into Gəʿəz. Glory be to him forever. Amen.

O Lord, have mercy and compassion upon your slave Gäbrä Märʿawi who commissioned the copying of this manuscript, remembering the conversation of Our Lord with his blessed disciples. Write his name on the column of light forever. Amen, amen, and amen. 10

¹⁷⁶ *Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with His Twelve Apostle Disciples at Jericho* ends here. The rest of the Gəʿəz version is a colophon.

List of References

- Bausi, A. 1992. ቀለሜንጦስ ፡ Il *Qalēmentos etiopico: La rivelazione di Pietro a Clemente, I libri 3–7, Traduzione e introduzione*, Studi Africanistici, Serie Etiopica, 2 (Napoli: Istituto Universitario Orientale, Dipartimento di Studi e Ricerche su Africa e Paesi Arabi, 1992).
- 1995. *Il Sēnodos etiopico. Canoni pseudoapostolici: Canoni dopo l'Ascensione, Canoni di Simone il Cananeo, Canoni Apostolici, Lettera di Pietro*, I: *Textus*; II: *Versio*, ed., tr., Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium, 552, 553, Scriptores Aethiopici, 101, 102 (Lovanii: Peeters, 1995).
- Beylot, R. 1984. *Testamentum Domini éthiopien: Édition et traduction*, ed., tr. (Louvain: Éditions Peeters, 1984).
- Budge, E. A. W. 1933. *The Alexander Book in Ethiopia: The Ethiopic Versions of Pseudo-Callisthenes, the Chronicle of al-Makīn, the Narrative of Joseph ben Gorion, and a Christian Romance of Alexander* (London: Oxford University Press, 1933).
- EAE. S. Uhlig, ed., *Encyclopaedia Aethiopica*, I: A–C; II: D–Ha; III: He–N; ed., in cooperation with A. Bausi, IV: O–X; A. Bausi, ed., in cooperation with S. Uhlig, V: Y–Z, *Supplementa, Addenda et Corrigenda, Maps, Index* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag, 2003, 2005, 2007, 2010, 2014).
- Galbiati, G. 1957. *Iohannis Evangelium apocryphum arabice*, I: *Arabica complectens*, II: *Latina proferens*, *Antiquitas christianae ex Oriente monumenta* (Mediolani: In aedibus Mondadorianis, 1957).
- Getatchew Haile 2004. 'Journey to Heaven: The Popular Belief of Reward and Punishment in Ethiopian Christianity', in V. Böll, D. Nosnitsin, T. Rave, W. Smidt, and E. Sokolinskaia, eds, *Studia Aethiopica: In Honour of Siegbert Uhlig on the Occasion of his 65th Birthday* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag, 2004), 41–66.
- 2018. *The Ethiopian Orthodox Church's Tradition on the Holy Cross*, *Texts and Studies in Eastern Christianity*, 10 (Leiden–Boston, MA: Brill, 2018).
- 'A Fragment of the Late Aksumite or Early Zag^{we} Period on the Commentary on the Gospel of Matthew', *Aethiopica*, 24 (2021), 223–232.
- Graf, G. 1944. *Geschichte der christlichen arabischen Literatur*, I: *Die Übersetzungen*, *Studi e Testi*, 118 (Città del Vaticano: Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, 1944).
- Grébaut, S. 1920. *Les miracles de Jésus*, II, ed., *Patrologia Orientalis*, 14/5 (71) (Paris: Firmin-Didot et C^{ie}, imprimeurs-éditeurs, 1920).
- 1923. *Les miracles de Jésus*, III, ed., *Patrologia Orientalis*, 17/4 (85) (Paris: Firmin-Didot et C^{ie}, imprimeurs-éditeurs, 1923).
- Hammerschmidt, E. 1960. *Äthiopische liturgische Texte der Bodleian Library in Oxford*, *Deutsche Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, Institut für Orientforschung, Veröffentlichung*, 38 (Berlin: Akademie-Verlag, 1960).
- Horn, C. B. 2017. 'Apocrypha on Jesus' Life in the Early Islamic Milieu: From Syriac into Arabic', in Miriam L. Hjälml, ed., *Senses of Scripture, Treasures of Tradition: The Bible in Arabic among Jews, Christians and Muslims*, *Biblia Arabica*, 5 (Leiden–Boston, MA: Brill, 2017), 58–78.
- La Spisa, P. 2014. 'À propos de l'Apocalypse de Pierre arabe ou Livre des Révélations (*Kitāb al Mağāl*)', in A. Bausi, A. Gori, and G. Lusini, eds, *Linguistic, Oriental and Ethiopian*

Conversation of Our Lord

- Studies in Memory of Paolo Marrassini* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag, 2014), 511–526.
- Löfgren, O. 1960. ‘Zur Charakteristik des apokryphen Johannesevangeliums’, *Orientalia Suecana*, 9 (1960), 107–130.
- Marcos Daoud and Marsie Hazen 1954. *The Liturgy of the Ethiopian Church*, ed. Marsie Hazen, tr. Marcos Daoud (Addis Ababa: Berhanenna Selam Printing Press of His Imperial Majesty Haile Selassie, 1954).
- Mäṣḥafä qəddase* 1957/1958. መጽሐፈ ፡ ቅዳሴ ፡ በግዕዝ ፡ በአማርኛ ፡ (Mäṣḥafä qəddase: bāgə’əzənnā bā’amarəñña, ‘The Book of the Mass, in Gə’əz and Amharic’) (Addis Abāba: Bərhanənnā sālam mattämiya bet, 1951 EC = 1957/1958 CE).
- Trumpp, E. 1882. *Das Hexaëmeron des Pseudo-Epiphanius. Aethiopischer Text, verglichen mit dem arabischen Originaltext und deutscher Uebersetzung*, ed., tr. E. Trumpp, Abhandlungen der königlichen bayerischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, I. Classe, 16/2 (München: Verlag der k. Akademie, 1882).

Summary

The article presents a collation and translation of an apocalyptic text, which may be titled, *Conversation of Our Lord and Saviour Jesus with His Twelve Apostle Disciples at Jericho*, as taken from EMMML 7229, fols 93r–109r. It is one of the two conversations known so far (the other took place at Däbrä Zäyt) and, although copied in the same hand, this conversation cannot be considered a part of the traditional *Nägärä Maryam*.